RELIGION

SECOND MANUAL

HODERICK MACEACHEN

238.28 M13b
Class Book
General Theological Seminary Library
Chelsea Square, New York
PRESENTED BY
Soc'y for Promoting Religion and Learning

RELIGION

SECOND MANUAL

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO · DALLAS
ATLANTA · SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

MacEachen's Course in Religion

RELIGION

SECOND MANUAL

BY

RODERICK MacEACHEN, D.D.

THE CATHOLIC UNIVERSITY OF AMERICA

WITH A PREFACE

BY

MOST REVEREND NEIL McNEIL, D.D.

ARCHBISHOP OF TORONTO

[illegible]

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1922

All rights reserved

Nihil Obstat

ARTHUR J. SCANLAN, S.T.D.,
Censor Librorum.

Imprimatur

✠ PATRICK J. HAYES, D.D.,
Archbishop of New York.

October 19, 1920

238.28
M15b
71708

COPYRIGHT, 1922,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published February, 1922.

PUBLISHED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

ANY large defection from the Catholic Church involves widespread controversy, as in the case of the Arian heresy or the Protestant movement. The result within the Church is undue emphasis on the intellectual side of religion. Heresy is rationalistic and has to be met by polemics. The emphasis is not "undue" under the circumstances, but undue in reference to normal conditions. The catechisms which originated in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries reflect the tone of a controversial epoch. They appeal to the head rather than to the heart. They were designed to fortify the faith of the child against the errors of the day by informing the intellect. In method they followed the pedagogy of their time. The sane philosophy of the thirteenth century had given place to the pedantry of the Renaissance. In his "History of Education," Paul Monroe thus describes the attitude then assumed toward the child:

"Methods followed the most formal grammatical lines, with no appreciation of the child's nature. He was considered to be a miniature man differing

from the adult in interests and powers of mind only in degree, not in kind."

Teachers then assumed that ideas could be conveyed to the mind of a child by means of abstract definitions and summaries. Men like Vives in Spain and Fénelon in France withstood this kind of pedagogy. The former insisted that "our senses are our first teachers," and the latter's method may be illustrated by his remarks on the best way of teaching the doctrine of the Blessed Trinity to a child. He observes that it may be possible, by repeating to the child over and over again, that "there are three Equal Persons, and They are God," to make him remember the words; but, says Fénelon, "I doubt if the child would understand their meaning." Then he suggests that the teacher tell the child the Gospel narrative of the Baptism of Christ in the waters of Jordan, where the voice of the Father and the descent of the Holy Ghost as a Dove upon the Son suggest the doctrine in a form adapted to the uninstructed mind. But Vives and Fénelon and a few other leaders were unable to change the main current. We are still in the wake of that Renaissance tradition, and the thesis of Bishop Bellord in his "Religious Education and its Failures" remains unrefuted.

The reform we need does not consist in simplifying the words or in explaining them. We need a reform in method. Professional teachers find our catechisms out of keeping with the methods they use in teaching other subjects. The author of this second volume of his series of Manuals has been led by years of work and experience to bring catechetical methods into accord with requirements based on the philosophy of knowledge which Aristotle initiated and St. Thomas developed. Without seeking it as an object to be aimed at, he has in fact devised a method in accord, as to its main lines, with modern pedagogical practice.

Dr. Francis H. J. Paul, the principal of De Witt Clinton High School, New York, in a review of the first volume of this series, says:

"The methods of presentation suggested are in full accord with the procedures that have made the best secular teaching effective. Interest is aroused by appealing to motives based on reverence for our Creator which rises naturally in the child's mind. The point of departure for the grasping of new truths is always the previous experience of the child. Thus the child's love of his father is used as a means of understanding the love he owes to his Heavenly Father. Analysis of knowledge

already possessed is used as a means of further comprehension."

In his "History of Philosophy," Bishop Turner, describing St. Thomas of Aquin's theory of knowledge, says:

"All knowledge begins with sense-knowledge. The senses, the intellectual faculties, and the authority of others are the sources of our knowledge, and, in normal conditions, they are reliable sources. . . . Intellectual knowledge is derived from sense-knowledge. The intellect, by its immaterial energy, separates, or puts aside, all the material conditions of the sense-image, leaving the immutable, universal element which represents itself on the mind as an immaterial idea."

The Professor of Education, in the University of Manchester, in his "Principles of Class Teaching," discusses the same subject from the teacher's point of view, and concludes:

"Here, then, we have some elementary facts about knowledge: (1) It begins in the senses; *nihil est in intellectu quod prius non fuerit in sensu.* (2) No single idea or bit of knowledge is isolated, but tends to associate with the rest of our store, forming complex groups. (3) Some of these tend to variety of *form* or quality-percepts, concepts, judgments, etc."

There is thus common ground of a fundamental kind between Scholastic Philosophy and the best modern Pedagogy. Both attach great importance to the concrete in the acquisition, and therefore also in the presentation, of knowledge. Lessons which begin with concrete illustrations and end with definitions are in accord with both. This method lends itself easily to the development of piety *pari passu* with knowledge. The aim is not to teach Christian doctrine apart from practice, but to teach the Christian religion as a life informed by truth.

✠ Neil McNeil
Archbishop of Toronto.

The Feast of the Sacred Heart, 1920.
Toronto, Canada.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
	Introductory — The Lord's Prayer	1
I.	God is Our Creator	9
II.	God is the Creator of the Earth	18
III.	God is the Creator of the Heavens	28
IV.	The Greatness of God	35
V.	Divine Revelation	43
VI.	The Blessed Trinity	51
VII.	The Angels	59
VIII.	The Devils	65
IX.	Heaven	75
X.	The Happiness of Heaven	82
XI.	Hell	91
XII.	The Commandments	99
XIII.	The First Commandment	110
XIV.	The Second Commandment	119
XV.	The Third Commandment	129
XVI.	The Fourth Commandment	140
XVII.	The Fifth Commandment	152
XVIII.	The Sixth and Ninth Commandments	164
XIX.	The Seventh Commandment	175
XX.	The Eighth Commandment	185
XXI.	The Tenth Commandment	197
XXII.	Sin	207
XXIII.	Original Sin	219
XXIV.	The Redemption	231

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXV.	The Blessed Virgin Mary	242
XXVI.	The Crucifixion	253
XXVII.	Death — Purgatory	264
XXVIII.	The Resurrection	275
XXIX.	Christ Founded the Catholic Church	285
XXX.	The Catholic Church	296
XXXI.	Divine Grace	308
XXXII.	The Sacrament of Baptism	320
XXXIII.	The Sacrament of Confirmation	330
XXXIV.	The Holy Eucharist	338
XXXV.	The Sacrifice of the Mass	347
XXXVI.	The Real Presence	358
XXXVII.	Holy Communion	367
XXXVIII.	The Sacrament of Penance	379
XXXIX.	The Sacraments of Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony	391
XL.	Judgment	403

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE USE OF MANUAL

Religion — Second Course is the companion text to this volume. The lessons in the Manual are intended to exercise the children in the spontaneous application to life of the truths contained in the corresponding lessons in *Religion — Second Course.*

The procedure should be similar to that suggested in *Religion — First Manual.* It will, perhaps, not be necessary to follow literally all the questions given here, as they are multiplied to supply the materials required even in extreme cases. The object of the questioning method here employed is to promote spontaneous activity on the part of the children. Therefore, the fewer questions required to provoke reflection and expression on their part, the better the sign of progress.

It is, nevertheless, advisable for the teacher, in preparing the class work, to study well the lines of thought presented by the questions. This will enable her to discover new processes of

thought which her own experience will suggest. She will thus be able to make the procedure more natural and familiar. By introducing local interests from the environment of the children the teacher will call forth a more ready response from them.

It should be the constant purpose of the teacher to procure expression from every individual child during each class period. To this end, it will often be necessary to encourage the timid and the distracted child. However, care must be taken to avoid the tiresome routine of mere recitation. The procedure should take on the nature of a conversation between children and teacher, and not that of a recitation. So far as possible the children should be made to feel that they are leading the conversation. This is comparatively easy, since no questions are ever asked save those suggested by their previous expression.

This class conversation is not intended to call forth expressions memorized from *Religion — Second Course*. It should, however, prompt the children to apply the thought from the corresponding lesson of the text. The questions are so arranged that they will bear relation to the matter of the corresponding lessons in the text. The purpose is to cause reflection on this matter

and to develop the power of expressing the ideas that proceed from this reflection. It is the assimilation-and-application process.

The result is not, therefore, to be measured in mere terms of knowledge, but rather in the capacity for thought engendered in the children and their aptitude in applying the truth to the practical problems of life. The conversation periods should be made as pleasant as possible. During these periods, the children should enjoy the greatest possible freedom from restraint. Their minds should be permitted to open freely and joyfully to the consideration of divine truth in conjunction with their own lives.

RELIGION

SECOND MANUAL

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER

The Lord's Prayer

Our Father who art in heaven, etc.

Children, tell me about this beautiful prayer. Tell me why you love to call God our Father. Tell me what good fathers do for their children. Show me how God does this for you.

Why do we call the Our Father the Lord's Prayer? Who taught us the Our Father? Where can you read about how our Lord taught the Apostles to say the Our Father? In what part of the Bible can you read this? (St. Matthew 6, 9; St. Luke 11, 2.)

Who, then, taught us to call God our Father? Why is God really and truly our Heavenly Father? What does God do to show that He is our Father?

Tell me, now, about God's family. Tell me about God's children. How does God wish us to

live together? How do we show that we love one another? How does God show His love for sinners? How does prayer show that you love God?

When shall we see God? Where is our true home? When will we be united with God? Where is God waiting for us? Why do we call God our Heavenly Father? Why do we say? — "who art in heaven."

Why do you wish that everybody would honor God's name? Why do you say in the Lord's prayer? — "hallowed be Thy name." Of course you know hallowed means holy. Why do you wish that everybody would make God's name holy? What wish are you expressing, then, when you say? — "hallowed be Thy name." Why do you wish God's name to be made holy by all the people in the world? When do people make God's name holy? How do people who love God speak His holy name?

Who rules our lives when we are good? Who tells us how to be good? Whom did God send into your home to teach you to be good? For whom, then, are your parents teaching you? Who is really teaching you when your parents tell you how to be good? How does God teach you in your home?

Who is ruling your life when you obey your

parents? What Church did God send to teach the people to be good? Who is really teaching us when the Catholic Church teaches us to be good? Who is ruling our life when we obey the Catholic Church?

For whom does your guardian angel watch over you? Who sent your guardian angel to watch over you? How does God put good thoughts in your mind? Who is ruling your life when you obey your guardian angel?

When do we ask God to rule our life? When is our life like a kingdom which God rules? Why do we say? — "Thy kingdom come." When we say "Thy kingdom come," we ask God to come to rule our life. We pray that He may rule the lives of all the people in the world. Now, what would you say if anybody asked you what is the meaning of "Thy kingdom come"?

Who tells us what is good and what is bad? How does God tell us this? What do you learn in church? How do we know what God wants us to do? Whose will are we following when we do what God wants us to do? Whose will do the angels and saints obey in heaven? Why do we say to God? — "Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven." What kind of people do God's will on earth?

Why do you wish that all the people in the world would do God's will? What does it show when you do God's will? Whom do you obey when you do God's will? Why are you happy to obey God? What do you do when you love God? Why do the angels and saints do God's will? When do you pray that all the people in the world may do God's will? What do you mean when you say? — "Thy will be done on earth."

Why do you like to do God's will as the angels and saints do it? When do you pray that all may obey God as the angels and saints obey Him? Why do you say? — "as it is in heaven."

Whose will must we do to be good? Who teach us God's will at home — in church? Who tells us how to use the things in this world? Whom do we obey when we use things right? How does God want us to use our eyes — our ears — our tongue?

Why do we call God our Father? How do we know that God is our Heavenly Father? How does God show that He is really our Heavenly Father? Who gives us all that we need? How do we get all that we need for our soul and body?

Tell me some of the things God gives us for our body. Tell me something about food — cloth-

ing — water — air — light — heat — houses. Tell me some of the things God gives us for our soul — to think — to know — to talk — the truth — good. Why does He give us teachers — parents — priests — the Catholic Church — our guardian angels?

How often do we need all these things for our soul and our body? When do we ask God to give us all these things? Why do we say? — "Give us this day our daily bread." What are we really asking God to give us when we ask for our daily bread? How do we ask God for all that we need? Why do we ask God for all that we need? What is God to us? Whose children are we all?

How do we show that we are happy because God is our Father? What does it show when we say so often "Our Father"? How do we show that we are glad God takes care of us? What does it show when we ask God to give us our daily bread?

When do we show that we know God gives us all that we need? When do we ask God to give us all that we need? What do we mean when we say? — "Give us this day our daily bread." Who knows what is best for us? Why should we always be contented with what we have? Who gives us what we have?

Whom does God send to help poor people and sick people? For whom do we help poor and sick people? How, then, does God give them what they need? When do we pray for all that we need? Who wants us to pray for what we need? What does it show when we pray to God? For whom do we show our love when we pray?

How does God show that He loves sinners? What is God always willing to do for them? Why is God always willing to forgive them? What must they do if they want God to forgive them? For what must they be sorry? What must they promise?

Why are you always willing to forgive those who are unkind to you? Who wants you to forgive others? Why does God want you to forgive others? What does it show when you forgive others? Why do you love all the people in the world? How do you show that you love those who injure you? Whom did our Lord forgive when He was hanging on the cross? For whom did He pray? Why do you pray for those who injure you?

When do we ask God to forgive us? What do we mean when we say to God? — "forgive us our trespasses." You know "trespasses" means faults and sins. Why do even good people ask God to forgive them? How often do good people commit

faults? Why do good people say every day? — "forgive us our trespasses." Why do we say? — "as we forgive those who trespass against us."

We ask God to forgive us as we forgive others. So that is how we want God to forgive us. We forgive those who injure us and we ask God to forgive us in the same manner.

Who tries to make people commit sin? Why does the devil try to make people commit sin? Why does the devil hate God? Why does the devil hate good people? What kind of thoughts does the devil put in their minds when he tempts them to sin? What, then, is temptation to sin? How does God help us avoid sin? Why did God send us our guardian angel? What does God's grace help us avoid? Who then helps us to keep from the temptation of the devil? Why does God help us to keep from temptation?

When do we ask God to keep us from temptation? What do we mean when we say to God? — "lead us not into temptation." Why will God help us keep from temptation? Why does God help us to be good? Why does He want us with Him in heaven? What are we really asking God when we say? — "lead us not into temptation."

Why does God wish to free us from the power of the devil? When do people obey the devil?

When are they in the power of the devil? What sends people to hell? When do we ask God to free us from the power of the devil? What do we mean when we say? "deliver us from evil." From what are we asking God to free us? What is the greatest evil in the world? Why is sin the only real evil in the world? What is the only thing that can separate people from God? What is the only thing that can send people to hell?

At the end of the prayer we say: "Amen." This is a Hebrew word which means, "so be it." It is put at the end of most prayers that we say.

Now I am sure you could tell anybody about the Lord's prayer. Show me now how you would explain the meaning of this prayer. Many people do not realize how much there is in this wonderful prayer.

Have the children take up, expression by expression, the whole prayer, beginning with, for instance: "Our Father who art in heaven." Lead them to explain the meaning of this. In this manner they will review the ideas that have been discussed.

It would be well here to discuss with the children the subject of daily prayers. Have them tell you the prayers they are accustomed to say morning and evening. The content of the usual daily prayers will be treated in the course of the lessons.

CHAPTER I

God Is Our Creator

God made me. God made all the people in the world. God is our Heavenly Father. We are all God's children. We are like one big family with God for our Father. We love one another. God loves us all. We love God above all things.

Children, you love your father and mother and your brothers and sisters. Who gave you your father and mother? Who taught your father and mother to love you so much? Who gave you to your father and mother? Where do all the people in the world come from?

Who is our Heavenly Father? How many people belong to God's family? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? How does God want us to act to one another? What does it show when you are kind to one another? How many people do you think God wants to be happy? Why do you always try to make others happy? Why do you always keep from hurting others' feelings?

What kind of words do you like to use to others? Why do you keep from disturbing others? What

do you do when others are studying or reading? Why do you like to keep quiet then? Why do you keep from pushing others when you are going together? Why do you wish to be kind to them?

Why are you always respectful to grown people? What would you do if you saw a poor blind man trying to cross the street? Why do you always say "thank you" when some one gives you something? What do you say if some one helps you? When do you thank God for all that He does for you? What do you do if somebody is unkind to you? Who teaches you to forgive others?

What can you do for sick people? What would you do if you saw somebody get hurt? Why would you try to help him? Who belong to God's family? Why do you love all the people in the world? How can you help all people? What will God do when you pray for them? What can you do for bad people? What will God do when you pray for them? Who will help them be sorry for their sins?

How can you show that you love all the people? Why do you like to do good to others? How do your father and mother show that they love you? How does God show that He loves you? What can you do for poor people?

What would you do if you found poor people

who had nothing to eat? What would you like to do if you saw some poor children who had no warm clothes in the winter? What would you do if they were too poor to buy shoes? What would you like to do if somebody was sick and had no money to buy medicine? What would you like to do if you saw a poor man in the winter who had no place to go?

How can you show that you love others? Why do you like to be cheerful at home? Why do you say "good morning" when you get up? Why do you forgive those who are unkind to you? How many people belong to God? What would you do if somebody struck you? Why would you forgive him? Why would you forgive anybody that did you harm? Why do you love everybody?

Who gave you life? Who takes care of all the people in the world? Who gave you your eyes? Why did God give you eyes? What wonderful things can you see with your eyes? Why did God make so many beautiful things? What do you think when you look at the beautiful flowers? How does it make you feel to see the beautiful sunrise or sunset? Why did God make the moonlight so beautiful? Why did God make so many beautiful stars?

Who gave you your ears? Where does music

come from? What kind of music do you like — piano — violin — organ — mandolin? Who put these beautiful sounds there? Why did God make these beautiful sounds? Why does God wish to make us happy?

Why do you like to hear fine singing? Where do those beautiful sounds come from? Who made our voice so wonderful? What other sounds come from our voice? Who gave us a voice so that we could talk? What does God want us to use our voice for? What can we say to people that are sad? When do you talk to God?

Why do you kneel and fold your hands when you pray? Where is God's house? Why do you genuflect when you enter the church? Whom do you adore when you genuflect?

Why do we breathe all the time? Why does our heart beat all the time? Who made our heart so wonderful? Why do we have to eat? Where do we get things to eat? Who makes things grow out of the ground? Who gave us strength to work? How does God want us to do our work? When does work make people happy? Why do you think God gives us so many things to make us happy? How did God make all things? How could God make them out of nothing? To make something out of nothing means to create.

Where can we read about how God made all things? Who wrote the Bible? How did God write the Bible? In what part of the Bible can we read about how God made the first man and woman? You can read this in the Book of Genesis. This is the first part of the Bible. You know some parts of the Bible are called books.

Do you know how God made Adam's body? How did God make Adam's soul? How did God make Eve's body? How did God make Eve's soul? In what part of the Bible can you read how God made Adam and Eve? Who gave us our soul? How long will our soul live? What is the soul called? What other spirits do you know? What spirits are in heaven? Who is the greatest spirit? How much does God know? What can our soul know after our body dies? When shall we have our body again?

Who made us so that we can think? How many things can you think about? How can you let others know what you are thinking about? Why cannot animals think? Who knows all that you are thinking about? What kind of things does God want you to think about? What does God want you to think about others? Why do you always try to think good things about others?

What can you do with your mind? Where is your mind? Who put your mind in your soul? How long will you have your mind after your body dies? Why will you be able to think and know things after your body dies? Who gave you your will? What can you do with your will? How do you choose good things? Who made you free to choose good things? Why can you wish things when your body is dead? In what part of you is your will? Who put free will in your soul? How long will you have free will after your body dies?

Whom do you worship when you go to church? Why do you genuflect in the church? Why do you think God wants all the people in the world to worship Him? How do we show that we love God? Before our Lord came, people used to build altars and burn sheep and cattle on them. That is the way they worshiped God. These burnt sheep and cattle were called sacrifices. They were offered to God. They used to offer fruit to God, too. You can read about this in the Book of Genesis. We show that we love God when we worship Him. Do you know about Cain and Abel? They were two sons of Adam and Eve. You can read in the Book of Genesis how they offered sacrifices to God.

Why did people long ago burn sheep and cattle on altars? What were these burnt sheep and cattle called? What else did they offer to God in those times? Where can you read about Cain and Abel? What did Cain and Abel offer to God? Why did they offer sacrifices to God? What sacrifice does the priest offer to God in the Catholic Church? What does he offer to God in the Mass?

How can you remember things? Who gave you your memory? Where is your memory located? Who put your memory in your soul? How long will you have memory after your body dies? How will you remember the people you knew?

To whom is our soul like? Why is our soul like God? Why is our soul like the angels? What are the angels called? What is our soul called? Who can see our soul? What does God know about our soul? What does God know about our thoughts? What does God know about our wishes? When is God pleased with our thoughts? When is God pleased with our wishes? Why do you always wish good for others? Why do you speak kindly to all people? Why do you say "good morning" or "good evening" or "how do you do"?

What can you do for people that are dead?

Why do you pray for people that are dead? What does the priest do for dead people? Why does the priest bless the graves when people are buried? What makes the grave a holy place?

How does God want us all to live together? When do you thank others? When do you thank God? For what do you thank God? Why did God do all these things for us? Why do your parents do so many things for you? How do you show that you love others? Why do you like to make others happy? What can you do for bad people? What do you ask God to do for them? Why do you want God to make them good? Who makes you good? What do you ask God every day to do for you?

How do you feel towards God when you think of all that He has done for us? What part of us is made to God's likeness? What spirits do you know? How long will our soul live?

For review induce the children to talk about the matters just discussed. Ask as few questions as possible. Suggest the topics to them in the fewest possible words. Try to lead them to find not only the solution but also the problem.

Test Questions[1]

1. What is God to us? 2. Where do we get our life? 3. What kind of soul did God give us? 4. Why do you love others? 5. How do you show your love for others? 6. Who takes care of all the people in the world? 7. What is God always willing to do for sinners? 8. For what do you thank God?

[1] The fundamental ideas of each lesson are contained in the Truths given at the end of the corresponding lesson in the companion text, Religion — Second Course. Test questions refer to these Truths.

CHAPTER II

God Is the Creator of the Earth

God made the earth as a place for us to live. He made the plants and the trees. He made the animals and the fishes of the sea. All these things He made for our benefit. He is a loving Father preparing a house for His family.

Now, children, would you tell me again about God's children? You told me many things about God's love for us. You told me how God wants us all to love one another.

Where do all the people in the world come from? To whom do we all belong? What wonderful things did God do for our body? What wonderful things did God do for our soul? What part of us is most like to God? Why did God make the world? Why did God make such a beautiful place for us to live in?

How long will our soul live? Why do you love all the people in the world? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? Why do you like to do good to others? What can you do to help bad people? What do you do when some one is unkind

to you? What do you say when some one is kind to you? What do you say to God for all that He has done for you? When do you thank God? Why do you like to make others happy? Who is our Heavenly Father? Why did God make the earth? Where can we read about how God made the earth? In what part of the Bible can you read this?

Who gave you your father and mother? Why did God make the world so beautiful? Why does He want us to be happy? How do God's children get things to eat on earth? What grows in the ground? Who makes them all grow? What fruits grow on trees? Why did God give us all those fine fruits?

You know the priest blesses the fruits of the earth and all eatables. He does that to ask God to make them help us more and to thank God for them. Where do we get meat to eat? What animals give us meat to eat? Why did God give us the animals? Where can you read about how God made the animals? In what part of the Bible can you read this? Who wrote this in the Book of Genesis? What was the difference between Adam and Eve and all the animals? Why can't the animals think? What happens when an animal dies? How long will our soul live? What

things do we get to eat from the water? Why did God give us so many kinds of fish? Where do we get milk, butter, cheese, eggs? Where do we get sugar? You know sugar is made out of beets and out of sugar cane. These things grow in the ground.

Where do we get salt from? I will tell you. There is salt in the ocean. Sometimes people have taken this salt from the ocean. In many places salt is found in the ground. So they dig pure salt out of the earth. Isn't that wonderful? Why did God put salt there? Where do we get honey? Who do you think taught the bees to make honey?

Why does God make it rain? What happens where it never rains? Can you tell me about the great deserts? How does God help people to cross the desert? What animal did He make to carry them? Why does the rain make you think of how good God is to us? What does it do for the grass, the plants, the trees, and the flowers? Why should we thank God for the rain? You know the rain comes from the ocean. The water is drawn up by the sun and made into clouds. Then it falls down as rain or snow or hail. What good does the snow do?

Where do we get clothes to wear? What is cloth made from? Where does cotton come

from? Why does God make cotton grow? Where do we get wool? Where do the sheep come from? How does God give us leather to make shoes? Where does silk come from? Who taught the silkworms to make silk? Why does God do all this for us?

What do we build houses from? Where did the stone come from? Where did the clay come from to make bricks? Who gave us sand and cement and lime to build houses out of?

What do we build churches out of? Where is the most beautiful church in the world? Where is St. Peter's Church? When did St. Peter die? St. Peter's Church was first built about sixteen hundred years ago. The church that now exists was built about five hundred years ago. The floor of the old church is below the floor of the new church. When was St. Peter's Church built? Whose house is the church? What does the bishop do when he blesses the church? Why do good people like to help build churches? Who gives us all the good things we have? Why do we like to make the church beautiful? Who gives us the flowers we put on the altar? What do you say to God every day for giving you all these things? What do you say when somebody does something for you?

Where do we get wood to put in our houses? Why does God make big trees grow? Where do we get slate to put on the roof? Who put the slate into the ground? What did God give us so that we could make tables and chairs and cupboards and things like that?

How do we keep our houses warm in the winter? What are stoves and furnaces made from? Who put the iron in the mountains? What else is iron good for? What are steam and water pipes made from? What are engines and machines made from? The priest blesses all kinds of engines and machines. Of course he does this only when people ask it of him. Why do you think the priest blesses engines and machines? Who gave us the materials to make them? What did God give us so that we could have knives and forks and spoons to eat with? What did He give us so that we could have railroads and trains to travel upon? What did God give us to cook our food with and to keep us warm? Why did God give us wood and coal and gas? Where does coal come from? Yes; it comes out of the ground. It is wood that fell there thousands and thousands of years ago. It grew hard and black. Now men dig it out of the ground. They go down in deep, dark pits and work there all day so that

we can have coal for our fires. What makes steam engines go? Who gave us water and fire to make steam? What makes street cars go? Where does electricity come from? Who put the electricity in the air? What else is electricity good for? Why did God give us gas?

Why did God give us oil? Do you know how we get oil and gas out of the earth? Men drill holes in the ground. Sometimes these holes are thousands of feet deep. They then put pipes down in them. If it is a gas well, the gas comes out of itself. If it is an oil well, it has to be pumped out.

What makes automobiles go? Where does gasoline come from? What makes airships fly? Who made the air for them to fly in? What did God give us to make ships from? Where did the ocean come from? Where do rivers and lakes come from? Why did God make the ocean and rivers and lakes so beautiful? Why did He want to make us happy? What happens to the water in very cold weather? What can you do on the ice? Where do the fishes live in the winter when there is ice on the water? Why do you think God made the ice freeze on top of the water? How can the fish live in the wintertime? What did God give you to make skates out of? What did He give you to make sleds out of?

Why did God make the earth so beautiful? Why did God give us the pretty flowers? How do the flowers make us happy? How can you make others happy with flowers? Why do you always try to be kind to others? Why do men and boys lift their hats when they meet a lady they know? How do you show that you love your mother? Of all the women that ever lived whom do you honor most? Whose mother is the Blessed Virgin Mary? Why do you honor the Blessed Virgin when you respect all women? Why do you honor your own mother when you lift your hat to a lady? Who wants you to love all the people in the world?

What did God give us to drink? Why did God make the streams so beautiful? Why did God give us the birds? How many kinds of birds do you know? Why do you like to hear the birds singing? Who taught the birds to sing? Why did God teach the birds to sing?

What are chickens and geese and ducks and turkeys good for? Why do you like to go out into the woods? Why did God make the trees so beautiful? What are they like in autumn? Why do you like to see the many-colored leaves? What can you gather in the woods in the fall? How many kinds of nuts do you know? How

does God make the trees and the bushes look in the springtime? Why did He make them bloom so beautifully? What kind of berries do you like? What kind of berries did God make grow on bushes? What kind of roses do you like? What do the beautiful roses make you think about? How do the roses show that God loves us? Why did God make the grass so beautiful? What kind of flowers grow in the water? Why do you like the lilies?

What living pets did God give you? What animals did God give us to help us work? What are horses, mules, and donkeys good for?

What did God give us to make jewelry out of? Where does gold come from? Where does silver come from? Why did God give us diamonds and other precious stones? How do all these things help us to love God? Why do good people help to make God's house beautiful? Where do we get gold and silver to help make the church beautiful? Who put gold and silver in the ground? Where do we get fine marble for our churches? Why would you like to help make God's house beautiful?

What kind of a place did God make for us to live in? What do you thank God for every day? Why did God make the earth so beautiful? What

can we do for others if we have many good things? Why do you like to share your good things with others? How many people does God want to make happy? Why do you thank God every day? If somebody asked you how you know that God loves you, what would you say? What could you tell him that God does for you? Could you tell him many things God does to make you happy? If he asked you why you pray to God every day, what would you say? If he asked you why you love all the people in the world, what would you say? If he asked you why you are kind and gentle to everybody, what would you tell him?

Did you ever hear about Noah in the Ark? Can you tell me about Noah? You can read about Noah in the Bible. The Book of Genesis tells about him. The people became very bad, so a great flood was sent by God. It rained forty days so that the earth was covered with water. All except Noah and his family were drowned. God saved Noah and his family because they were good. He told Noah to build a big houseboat. It is called the Ark. Noah and his family lived in this houseboat until the flood was over, and when they came out Noah offered sacrifice to God to thank Him for saving them from the

flood. For what do you thank God every day? What kind of people thank God for all that they have? How did Noah thank God? Where can you read about Noah?

Who is our Heavenly Father? Whose children are we all? Why does it make you happy to think about God? What can you see around you that makes you happy? Why did God put so many beautiful things in the world? How can you show that you are thankful to God for all these things? Why are you really giving to God when you give to poor people? Whose children are they? How can you do kind acts for God? Why do you do for God the kind acts you do for others? How do you act towards others to show that you love God? Why do we offer the holy Sacrifice of the Mass to God? What kind of sacrifices did the people offer to God before our Lord came?

Test Questions

1. Who made the earth? 2. Who made the plants? 3. Where do the animals come from? 4. Why did God make these things? 5. How do the fishes happen to be in the sea? 6. Why did God make the birds and flowers and many other beautiful things? 7. Why does God wish to make us happy? 8. Who tells us how to use the things which God has given us?

CHAPTER III

God Is the Creator of the Heavens

God made the sun, the moon, and the stars. The planets show forth God's love and power. The beauty of the heavens makes us happy. The planets move together in peace and harmony.

Who is our Heavenly Father? Why do you always try to be kind to others? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? Why did God make the world? Why did God make so many beautiful things? How long shall we live on the earth?

Where is our true home? How long will our soul live? What spirits do you know? What spirits are in heaven? Why did God make the sun? What does the sun give us? What does the sun do for the plants and trees?

What makes the sun look so small? The sun is 93,000,000 miles from the earth and is a million times larger. How big is the earth? Why does the sun make you think of God's goodness? How can the earth travel around the sun every year? (*600 millions of miles.*) How far does the

earth travel every minute? (*1000 miles.*) Why is the earth never one minute late in the year? What makes you think how wonderful God is? What do we get out of wood and coal? Where did the heat come from that is in wood and coal? What did God do for us so that we can cook our food? In what other way did God give us fire? Where do we get gas and oil? Why did God put gas and oil in the earth? Why did God make the sun so bright? When does it make you happy to look at the sun? Why did God make the sunrise so beautiful? Why is it dark at night and light in the day? How often does God make the earth turn around? How often does the earth travel around the sun? How far does the earth travel on its way around the sun? How can the earth always keep in the same path? How far does the earth travel every minute? Who guides the earth in its way? Why does that make you think about God? Why did God make the earth and the sun? Whose dwelling place is the earth? How long shall we live here? Where is our true home? How long shall we live in heaven? With whom shall we be in heaven?

Why should we think more about our heavenly home than about the earth? Why does God want us to keep from loving this world too much?

What place does God want us to think about? How does God want us to use everything in this world? Where does He want these things to help us to go? How can you use money to help you go to heaven? How can you do good with money? Why does everything on earth make you think about God? Why do many things make you think about God's love?

Why did God give us the moon? Why does the moon look so small? How far is the moon from the earth? (*250,000 miles.*) How big is the moon? (*2160 miles in diameter.*) Where does the moon get its light? How often does the moon travel around the earth? (*Once a month.*) How many miles a minute does it go? (*36 miles.*) Who guides the moon on its way? Why did God make the moonlight so beautiful? Why does the moon make you think how great and good God is? Why do you like to look at the beautiful stars in the night? Why do you think God made the stars? Do you know how many stars there are in the sky? (*More than 100 millions.*) When you look at the beautiful stars, what do they make you think about? How do they travel so fast? How do they keep from crashing together?

When you see how many beautiful things God

has done, what does it make you think about? Why should it make everybody honor God to see all the wonderful things that He has done?

Who are the only beings of this world that are made to the image and likeness of God? What part of us is made to God's image? Why does God want to make us happy? Why does God love us? Why are you glad to serve God? What kind of people are happy? Why do we say that God is Lord of heaven and earth? To whom do all things belong? When do we honor God as the Lord and Ruler of the world? What sacrifice do we offer that honors God as the Lord of the world? Who gave us the Sacrifice of the Mass? What does the priest offer to God in the Mass? Under what form does He offer our Lord's body and blood?

Who is the only one to whom we can offer sacrifice? Why can we not offer sacrifice except to God alone? Who alone is the Lord and Ruler of the world? What kind of sacrifices did the Jews offer to God before our Lord was born?

In how many parts of the world do priests offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? How long will priests offer the Sacrifice of the Mass in the world? In what part of the Bible can you read about the sacrifices of Cain and Abel? What other sacri-

fice can you read about in the Book of Genesis? Why did Noah offer sacrifice to God?

Where did heaven and earth come from? To whom do we belong? Who are God's children? What does it show when you do kind acts for others? Why do you say "please" when you ask something of others? Why do you open the door and let somebody go first if you are both going through? Why do you like to be kind to others? Who loves us all? Who takes care of us all? Why did God make this beautiful world? How long will we live on earth? What will happen when we die? What will they do with our body? Where will our soul go when we die? Where is our true home? How long will heaven last? What does God want us to do here on earth? Why does He want us to be good? If somebody asked you why we live here on earth, what would you say? What are we getting ready for? Why does God want us to love heaven better than this world? Why does God want us to help poor people? Whose children are the poor people?

Did you ever hear of St. Francis of Assisi? He was a holy man who lived about seven hundred years ago. When he was a young man, he was very rich and fond of pleasure. But he began to think about God and about heaven. So he gave all his

money to the poor and became a beggar. All his life after that he went about teaching the people to be good and helping the poor.

Now if somebody asked you how long ago did St. Francis live, what would you say? What made St. Francis give all his money to the poor? Why did St. Francis become a beggar? Where is St. Francis now? Why do you think the saints wanted to be poor? Why do good people love God more than money? How long will they have money? How long will they have God?

Who gave us strength to work? Why does it make people happy to work? Why do you think God wants us to work here? What shows that this is not our true home? What are some of the things you can thank God for? What can you do to make others happy? Why do you always try to act kindly to others? Why do boys take off their hats when they enter the house? Why do you like to show respect for others? To whom do all the people in the world belong? Why do you always try to do what your father and mother tell you? Why did God give you your mother and father? Why do you always try to help your parents?

When do you thank your parents? When do you thank anybody? Why do you thank God

every day? Why did God make the world? What makes you think how great God is? What makes you think how good God is? What makes you think how much God loves us?

Who tells us how to use everything in this world? Where do these things help us to go? Why does God want us to keep from loving the things of this world too much? Whom do we thank for all that we have? What do the good things of this world show about God?

Test Questions

1. Where did the sun and the moon and the stars come from? 2. Who rules the sun and the moon and the stars? 3. Why did God make the sun? 4. Why did God make the moon? 5. Why did God make the stars? 6. Who is the Lord and Maker of heaven and earth? 7. For whose benefit did God make all things in this world? 8. How does God want us to use the things of this world?

CHAPTER IV

The Greatness of God

God is eternal. He is unchangeable, all-wise, all-just, all-merciful, omniscient, omnipotent, and omnipresent.

Children, the last time you told me how God made the sun, the moon, and the stars. Perhaps you will tell me about them again to-day. What does the sun make you think about? What do you think about when you look at the moon and the stars? Why did God make the sky so beautiful? Why do you like to look at the clouds? What can you see that is beautiful in the morning? What is beautiful in the evening?

Why does God take so much care of us? How long has God taken care of people? Who was the first man? Who takes care of the angels? Who gave the angels life? Who made your body so wonderful? How can you see so much with such little eyes? Why are you able to talk? Who put all those wonderful sounds in your voice? How can you let other people know what you are thinking about? How can you

make people happy with your voice? How can you honor God with your voice?

Who made the world? How long did God live before He made the world? How long did God live before He made the angels? How long has God been just as He is now? How long has God been God? How long has the Father been God? How long has the Son been God? How long has the Holy Ghost been God?

Yes; millions and millions of years make no change in God. He is always the same wonderful, good, and loving God. How long will God be just as He is now? How long will God be God? How long will God the Father be God? How long will God the Son be God? How long will God the Holy Ghost be God?

What did God give us so that we can write? How do you make others happy by writing? How can you put your thoughts on paper? How do you think? Who gave you your soul? Why do you like to think about God? Why does it make you love God more to think about Him? What do you think about God when you look at all the good things in the world? Why did God make the world? Why did God make the sun? Why did God make the moon? Why did God make a hundred million stars? Why did God

make the flowers? Why did God make the birds? Why did God make the bees? Why did God make the ocean? Why did God make the fishes? What shows that God is all-wise?

How many people does God know? How many people that ever lived does God know? How many people that will ever live does God know? What does God know about us all? What does God know about what we do? What does God know about what we think? What do you think about God when you look at the sun? What does the moon make you think about? What thoughts come into your mind when you look at the stars? What do you think about God when you look at all the people around you? What do the pretty flowers make you think about? What do you think when you hear the birds singing?

What does God know about our prayers? What does God know about our love? What made the saints so holy? Whom did they love best of all? What saints do you know? What did God know about the saints? What did He know about their prayers? What did they do for the poor? How did they act towards everybody?

What do you know about St. John the Apostle? On whose breast did he lean at the Last Supper?

How long did he live? Who saved him from the tank of boiling oil? Do you know what he used to say to the people when he was a very old man? He was so old that he could not walk. So he used to ask them to carry him out to the people. Then he would repeat over and over again: "Little children, love one another."

What does God know about the stars? What does God know about the moon? What does God know about the sun? What does God know about the earth? What does God know about the trees and plants? What does God know about the blades of grass? What does God know about the flowers? What does God know about the ocean? What does God know about the grains of sand on the seashore? What does God know about the animals? Who knows how many animals there are in the world? Who gives life to every little bee? What does God know about all the fishes in the sea? How much, then, does God know?

What does God know about what will happen to-morrow? What does God know about what will happen next year? What does God know about what will ever happen? Who knows when we are going to die? Who knows when the world will come to an end?

What does God do for us when we are good?

What kind of actions will God always reward? What will God do when we are kind to others? What will God do when we help others? What will God do when we give something to poor people? What will God do when we do our work well? What will God do when you obey your parents? Who taught your mother and father to love you so much? Who helps them to keep you good always? What will God do when you say your prayers well every morning and evening? What will God do when you go to Mass every Sunday and Holy Day? What will God do when you go to Confession and Holy Communion often?

Why do we say that God is all-just? What does God reward? What does God punish? Why is God even good to bad people? What is God always ready to do for bad people? When will God forgive them? Why do we say that God is all-merciful?

Why do you always forgive those who do you harm? What do you do when somebody says mean things to you? What do you do when somebody strikes you? What do you do when somebody tells lies about you? Who is pleased when you forgive others? Who taught us to forgive others? Why do you always try to speak to others in a nice pleasant voice? Why do you

always try to be kind to others? How can you help others to be happy? Why do you always try to be cheerful?

How does the sunrise happen to be so beautiful? How did the little bees learn to make honey? Where did all the animals come from? Where did the sky come from? Who makes our heart beat? Who keeps the fish alive in the ocean? Who guides the earth in its path around the sun? Where did the angels come from? Where did all the people in the world come from? How did God make everything in the world? Why did He not need anything to make them out of? What can God do? Why do we say that God is almighty? What does God have to do to make anything?

What part of us is made to the image of God? How long will our soul live? Who will keep our soul alive forever? Who gave the angels life? How long will the angels live? Who will keep the angels alive forever? Who will raise up our bodies on the last day? Why can God easily give us back our bodies on the last day? How long will our bodies live after that? Who will keep our bodies alive forever? How long shall we love God? How long will God love us? When do we go to our true home?

Why do we think more of heaven than of this world? Why do you always try to make others happy? Why do you act nice at table? What does it show when you eat slowly and keep from making noise? Why do you always pass things to others at table? Why do you say "please" when you want something at table? How do you show that you love your family? How can we show that we love God? What can we do for others to show that we love God? What kind of people love God? How can you help others to be good? What kind of people are happy?

When is God with us? In how many parts of the world is God present? Where was God when Adam and Eve sinned? Where was God when Cain killed Abel? In what part of the Bible can you read about Adam and Eve and Cain and Abel? Where was God when Noah offered his sacrifice? Where can you read about Noah's sacrifice?

Where was God when Abraham took Isaac up the mountain to sacrifice him? Where can you read about Abraham and Isaac? Where was God when Joseph's brothers sold him? You can read about Joseph in the Book of Genesis, too. There God tells us all that happened to the Israelites. You know they were God's chosen people. They are called Jews now.

Where was God when the holy martyrs died for our Faith? When is God present in heaven? With how many angels is God present in heaven? With how many saints in heaven is God present? Where, then, is God always present? Why can God be present everywhere at the same time? When shall we be able to see God?

Test Questions

1. When does God live? 2. How long will God be just as He is now? 3. Why do we say that God is all-wise? 4. What does God know? 5. Why is God just? 6. Why do we say that God is all-merciful? 7. Why do we say that God is almighty? 8. Where is God?

CHAPTER V

Divine Revelation

God told us many things about Himself, about heaven, and about the angels. He told us about the Blessed Trinity. God sent the patriarchs and the prophets to tell us many things. Then our Lord Himself came. He told us more than all the others. Then our Lord sent the Apostles to tell us many more things. God wrote the Bible. The Catholic Church teaches us all these things. God did all this for us because He loves us.

You told me last time, children, many wonderful things about God. How much can God do? What are some of the things that God has done? What does God do for you every day? How much does God know? What does He know about what happened long ago? What does He know about what is going to happen? How long has God been just as He is now? How long will God be just as He is now?

Why do we say that God is all-just? What will God reward? What will God punish? When is God willing to forgive sinners? Why do we say that God is all-merciful? Why do you always

forgive those who are unkind to you? Why do you pray for bad people? Where do we all gather together to pray to God? Why are we all like brothers and sisters?

Why did God tell us many things about Himself? Why does God love us so much? Why did God want us to know more about Him? Who is our Father in heaven? How did we learn about heaven? Why did God tell us about heaven? How did we find out about the angels? How do we know that our guardian angels watch over us all the time? How did we learn about the bad angels? Who do you think told us that the devils hate us? Who told us that the devils try to make us bad?

Who told us about the Blessed Trinity? What did God tell us about the three divine persons? How long have the three divine persons lived? If somebody asked you how you know that there are three divine persons in God, what would you say? How do we learn all these truths that God told us? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Why are we sure that all these things are true? Why are you happy to believe all these things? How often can you thank God for teaching you all these things?

How long has it been since God spoke to the

patriarchs? Can you name some of the patriarchs? When did the prophets live? Who sent the prophets to teach the people? What did the prophets tell us? Who came down from heaven to tell us many great truths? Who told us most about God? What twelve men did our Lord send to tell the people many great truths about God? Who were the first bishops and priests of the Catholic Church? How do we know what the prophets taught? How do we know what our Lord and the Apostles taught? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Who ordained the Apostles' priests? Who was the first Pope?

You know you can read about St. Peter and the other Apostles in the Bible. The Gospel tells what our Lord said to St. Peter when He made him head of the Church. St. Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, and St. John wrote the Gospel. Now, where can we read what our Lord said to St. Peter? Who wrote the Gospel? How did St. Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, and St. John know what to write? What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church?

What book did God write? How did God write the Bible? How much of the Bible did

God tell these holy men to write? Who teaches us what the Bible means? Who wants the Catholic Church to teach us what the Bible means? What does the Bible tell us about the Blessed Trinity? What does it tell us about the first divine person? Who is the first divine person? What does the Bible tell us about the second divine person? Who is the second divine person? What does the Bible tell us about God the Son? What does it tell us about His birth? What does it tell us about His blessed mother? What does it tell us about His death? When does it say our Lord came back to life?

What does the Bible tell us about the third divine person? When does it say our Lord sent the Holy Ghost to the Catholic Church? How many days was it after our Lord went up to heaven? What is the only book that God wrote? Why is everything in the Bible true? How do we know all that God wants us to know? How do we know all that God wants us to do? Why did God give us the Catholic Church? Why does God want us to be good? Why does God want us to go to heaven? Why does God want us with Him in heaven?

Why does God want us to love one another? How do we show that we love one another?

What do you do if you are sitting down and a man or woman has no seat? What does that show? Why do you love all the people in the world? Why do you say "yes, ma'am" to a woman? Why do you respect all women? What woman do you love best on earth? Who gave you your mother? What woman do you honor more than any other woman in the world?

Why do you say "yes, sir" when you are speaking to a man? Why do you respect all men? Who loves all the men and women in the world? What man do you love best on earth? Who gave you your father? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? How long shall we all be together in heaven? Who belong to God's family?

How did we learn so many things about God? Why did God tell us these things? Who were the first men to whom God told many great truths? How long ago is it since the patriarchs lived? How long is it since the prophets lived? How long is it since our Lord came down from heaven? How long is it since God sent the Catholic Church to teach us? What does God want the Catholic Church to tell us about the Bible? What does the Bible tell us about the earth? What does the Bible tell us about the sun, the moon, and the stars? What does the Bible tell us about the

ocean? What does the Bible tell us about the plants and the trees and the flowers? What else does the Bible tell us that God made? What does it tell us about the animals? What does it tell us about the fishes? What does it tell us about the birds?

What does it tell us about the first man? Do you know how God made Adam's body? He formed it out of clay. He made a soul and put it into Adam's body. Then Adam began to live. God made Eve's body from a rib which He took from Adam's side. He gave her a soul and at once she began to live. Where can you read about all this? What is that part of the Bible called? What does the Bible say God did for His people?

That part of the Bible called the Acts of the Apostles tells us about the Apostles. St. Luke wrote the Acts of the Apostles. Of course God put in his mind everything that he wrote. Now if some one asked you what part of the Bible tells us about the Apostles, what would you say? Who wrote the Acts of the Apostles? Who told St. Luke what to write?

Why did God tell us all these things in the Bible? What does the Book of Genesis tell us? Where do we read of how God made the world? Why are you happy to believe all that is in the

Bible? Where did everything in the Bible come from? What Church teaches us all that God told us? How do we know what the Catholic Church teaches? Who sent the priests to teach us? Who were the first priests?

Why does God want us to be kind to one another? How do we show that we love one another? Why do you try to keep very quiet when somebody is sick? Why do you keep quiet when others want to read or study? How did our Lord teach the people to act toward one another? How did the Apostles teach the people to act toward one another? Whom did they teach them to love? How many people does the Catholic Church teach you to love? What does the Catholic Church teach you to do for bad people? What does the Catholic Church teach you to do for people who injure you? What does the Catholic Church teach you to do for people who say bad things about you?

What do we have to do to be good? How do we know all that God wants us to do? Who are God's children? When can we talk with God? What can we do for bad people? What can we ask God to do for bad people? What do you do for your parents? Who sent your parents to take care of you? When do you say "thank

you" to others? What has God done for you? What does God do for you every day? What do you say to God for all this?

Test Questions

1. How did we learn about the three divine persons? 2. Who told us that the three divine persons are equal in all things? 3. How did we learn about heaven and the angels? 4. Who wrote the Bible? 5. To whom did God speak? 6. Who came from heaven to teach us? 7. Who sent the Apostles to teach us? 8. How do we learn now all that God wants us to know?

CHAPTER VI

The Blessed Trinity

God has told us about the three divine persons. The three divine persons are equal. The three divine persons can do all things. The three divine persons know all things. The three divine persons love us. The three divine persons are called the Blessed Trinity. We pray to the Blessed Trinity. We shall see the three divine persons in heaven.

Children, no doubt you are going to tell me many fine things to-day. How did we learn many things about God? Why did God tell us all these things about Himself? To whom did God speak? Can you name some of the patriarchs? When did God send the prophets? Who came from heaven to teach us? What twelve men did our Lord send to teach us? What book did God write? How did God write the Bible?

In what part of the Bible can you read what our Lord said to St. Peter? (St. Matthew 16, 16–19; St. John 21, 15–17.) Who wrote the four Gospels? Who told St. Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, and St. John the words to write? In what part of the Bible can you read about the Apostles?

Who wrote the Acts of the Apostles? How much of this book did God tell those holy men to write?

What part of the Bible tells us how God made Adam and Eve? How did God form Adam's body? What part of the Bible is the Book of Genesis? What part of the Bible tells us how God made the earth, the sun, the moon, and the stars? What part of the Bible tells us how God made the animals? How do we know that God always took care of the people? How do we know all that God told the patriarchs? How do we know all that God told the prophets? How do we know all that Christ and the Apostles taught?

Why did God tell us so many things about Himself? Why did God tell us about heaven? Why did God tell us about the angels? Who told us first about the three divine persons? How do we know that the three divine persons are one God? Why did God tell us this? When will we see how great and wonderful God is? When will we see God the Father? When will we see God the Son? When will we see God the Holy Ghost?

What are the three persons together called? When do you often name the three persons of the Blessed Trinity? Whom do we honor on Trinity Sunday? When does Trinity Sunday come? (*The first Sunday after Pentecost.*) How many days

after Easter is Pentecost? What happened on Pentecost? What persons do you honor when you make the Sign of the Cross? When do you talk with God the Father? When do you talk with God the Son? When do you talk with God the Holy Ghost? Whom does God the Father love? Whom does God the Son love? Whom does God the Holy Ghost love?

Who told us about the three divine persons? Why are you happy to believe what the Catholic Church teaches about the three divine persons? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Why are you happy to believe all that God tells us? Why do we love God better when we know more about Him? What, then, should we do to love God better? What do people do when they love God? When do people serve God? What does it show when we serve God?

Why does God want to make us all good? Why does God want us all in heaven? Why do you all love one another? How many people does God love? What is God to us? Who are God's children? Why do you want everybody to be good? What will they do if they are good? What kind of people love God?

In how many things are the three divine persons equal? To whom is God the Father equal?

Who is equal to God the Son and God the Holy Ghost? Who is equal to God the Father and God the Holy Ghost? Who is equal to God the Father and God the Son? How much can the three divine persons do? How much can God the Father do? How much can God the Son do? How much can God the Holy Ghost do? How much do the three divine persons know? How much does God the Father know? How much does God the Son know? How much does God the Holy Ghost know? When shall we see the three divine persons? When shall we understand the Blessed Trinity? When shall we know how great and wonderful God is?

How long has God been God? How long has God been just as He is now? How long have the three divine persons been God? How long has the Father been God? How long has the Son been God? How long has the Holy Ghost been God? Where was God before the world was made? Where was God the Father before the world was made? Where was God the Son before the world was made? Where was God the Holy Ghost before the world was made? Where was God the Father before the angels were made?

How long will God be just as He is now? How long will the Father be God? How long will the

Son be God? How long will the Holy Ghost be God? Where will God be after the end of the world? Where will God the Father be after the end of the world? Where will God the Son be after the end of the world? Where will God the Holy Ghost be after the end of the world?

Whom do you name when you make the Sign of the Cross? In whose name are the Sacraments given? In whose name is Baptism given? What does the priest say when he baptizes a child? In whose name is the Sacrament of Confirmation given? In whose name is the Sacrament of Penance given?

What did God tell us so that we would love Him more? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? How do we act toward one another? Why are we all like one big family? How do you show that you love one another? What does it show when you speak kindly to others? How do you show that you love your brothers and sisters at home? Why do you like to share your good things with others? Who gives us all the good things we have? What does God want us to do if we have many good things and others have none? Why do you keep from laughing at people who make a mistake? Who helps you to be kind to others in all things?

Who sent God the Son to us? Why did God the Son come to us? What did God the Son want to save us from? Why did our Lord come to save us? Where do the devils try to take us to? Why do they want to take us away from God? Why do they hate God?

Who sent God the Holy Ghost to the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? What does the Holy Ghost help the Catholic Church to teach? How long will the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why does God the Holy Ghost do all this for us? Who makes us good and holy? Why does the Holy Ghost make us good and holy? Why does the Holy Ghost want us to go to heaven?

Who is the first person of the Blessed Trinity? To whom is God the Father equal? Who is the second person of the Blessed Trinity? To whom is God the Son equal? Who is the third person of the Blessed Trinity? To whom is God the Holy Ghost equal?

Who spoke to the patriarchs? Who spoke to the prophets? Who came from heaven to teach us? Who sent the Apostles to teach us? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Who sent the priests to teach us? Why did God do all this for us? Where did we all come from?

Who gave you to your mothers and fathers? Why does God love us all? Why do you all love one another?

Why do you always try to call others by their right name? What do you say when you answer a lady? What do you say when you are answering a man? Why do you show respect for all grown people? Why do you always try to help old people? What can you sometimes do for old people?

How long will you live on earth? What will happen when you die? Where will your soul go when you die? How long will your soul live? What can you do with your soul? Why can't the animals think? What is our soul? What other spirits do you know? Where do we get the Bible? Who told us about the Blessed Trinity? What does the Bible tell us about the three divine persons? Why do we love the Bible? Whose truths are in the Bible? Where can you read about the Ten Commandments? Where can you read about our Lord and the Apostles? How do we know what the words of the Bible mean? Why are we happy to believe all that is in the Bible? Why are we happy to believe all that the Catholic Church teaches?

How many persons are there in God? What

do you call the three divine persons all together? When is Trinity Sunday? Who is the first person of the Blessed Trinity? Who is the second person of the Blessed Trinity? Who is the third person of the Blessed Trinity? Whom do you honor when you make the Sign of the Cross? In whose name were you baptized? You can read in the Bible how our Lord told the Apostles to baptize people in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. (St. Matthew 28, 19.) In whose name does the bishop confirm you? In whose name does the priest forgive your sins? Why do you often say? — "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost."

Test Questions

1. How many persons are there in one God? 2. In what are the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost one and the same? 3. In what are the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost distinct? 4. How long have the three divine persons been God? 5. How long will the three divine persons be God? 6. What can the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost do? 7. What do the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost know? 8. Whom do the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost love?

CHAPTER VII

The Angels

God made the angels pure and holy. The angels are spirits; they are more perfect beings than men. The angels love God; they dwell in joy and peace with God. Our guardian angels watch over us. They love us very much; they speak to our hearts without words; they want to lead us to God. We love and honor our guardian angels.

Why did God tell us so many things about Himself? Why does God want us to know Him? To whom did God speak first of all? Who came from heaven to tell us many things about God? Whom did our Lord send to teach us? How do we know all that the patriarchs, and the prophets, and our Lord, and the Apostles taught? What does the Catholic Church teach us? Which person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church?

What did God tell us about the Blessed Trinity? What book did God write? How did God write the Bible? How do we know what the words of the Bible really mean? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

Where can we read about the angels? What kind of angels were the angels when God made them? What part of us is a spirit?

What can we do with our soul? Where is our power to think? Where is our power to will? How long will our soul live?

Whom do the angels love? Why do the holy angels love God so much? How long will the angels live? Why do you think the angels love one another so much? Why do you love one another? Whose children are we all? How do you show that you love one another? How can you help all the people in the world?

What do we do with our free will? What do the angels do with their free will? What kind of beings can think? How fast can our thoughts travel? How long does it take your thoughts to travel to the sun and back? How fast can the angels travel? Of course you know the angels do not have to have a body to live. You see pictures of angels with wings; that is just to show that they are different from us. Why can we not see the angels? What kind of beings can we see with our eyes? When will we be able to see the angels? Who is the greatest of all spirits? When shall we see God?

Did you ever hear how God converted St. Paul?

I will tell you. St. Paul's name was Saul. He hated the Christians. So he was hunting them to put them to death. One day he was riding a horse along the road when suddenly there was a great light around him. Then God spoke to him, saying: "Saul, Saul, why are you doing this wicked thing to me?" Poor Saul was sorry then for all that he had done. He was baptized and afterward became a great Apostle. He loved God very much. In the end he died for our holy Faith. You can read about Saul's conversion in that part of the Bible called the Acts of the Apostles.

Now, what did God say to St. Paul? What had Saul been doing before God spoke to him? What did St. Paul do after that? What happened to St. Paul in the end? In what part of the Bible can you read about St. Paul's conversion? *It may be well to read this passage to the children, Acts 9.*

What do the angels use their intellect for? In what part of us is our intellect? How do the angels know things? How do the angels see? Who has the most wonderful intellect of all? How much does God know? Who has the most wonderful free will? If God wishes anything, what happens? What would happen if God wished for

another world like this? How quickly would it be made? How do you think the angels talk to one another? How can they talk without words? Why can the angels see the thoughts in one another's mind? Who knows all the angels? How many of the angels does God love? Who is Queen of the Angels?

Why did God send angels to watch over us? Why does God help us always to be good? Why does God want to have us in heaven?

What are those angels called that watch over us? Why do the angels love us so much? What do our guardian angels help us to do? Why do they want us all to love God?

How often do you think your guardian angel prays to God for you? Who saves you from bad people sometimes? Did you ever hear how the angel helped St. Peter?

I will tell you. St. Peter was preaching to the people in Jerusalem. He was telling the people to believe in our holy Faith. He was telling them all that God wanted them to do. Then some bad people put St. Peter into prison. They put chains on his hands and feet and put soldiers there to guard him. They were going to put him to death the next day. But in the night an angel came, took off the chains, opened the door, and

led St. Peter out of the prison. Now he was free. He went and bade good-by to the Christians, who were all together praying for him. That night he left the city. You can read about this in that part of the Bible called the Acts of the Apostles.

Now, what could you tell anybody about St. Peter and the angel? In what part of the Bible can you read about St. Peter and the angel? *This passage might be read to the children, Acts 12.* Why do you love your guardian angel so much? When can you pray to your guardian angel? What do you thank your guardian angel for? How does your guardian angel speak to you? What does your guardian angel put into your mind? How does your guardian angel want you to act in church? What good thought does he often put into your mind as soon as you get up in the morning? What thought does he put into your mind when you are going to bed? What does he say to you when others are unkind to you? What thought does he put into your mind when some one strikes you? Why does he want you to forgive those who do harm to you?

Who told your guardian angel what to do for you? Who taught your guardian angel to love you? What do you say to God when you think

of all that your guardian angel does for you? Why did God send His holy angels to take care of you? Why does God love you so much? How did the angel help St. Peter? What did God say to St. Paul?

An angel once appeared to St. Philip, the Apostle. He told him where to go to teach the people. Of course God sent the angel to tell St. Philip this. You can read about this in the Acts of the Apostles. (Acts 8, 26.)

Test Questions

1. What are the angels? 2. What did God do for the angels when He made them? 3. To whose likeness are the angels made? 4. How do the angels talk to one another? 5. Whom did God send to watch over us? 6. What do we call the angels that watch over us? 7. How does our guardian angel speak to us? 8. Why do we pray to our guardian angel?

CHAPTER VIII

The Devils

Lucifer and many of the angels rebelled against God. They thought they could live without God. Then they were cast into hell. There they will suffer forever. The devils hate God. They try to lead people away from Him. They put bad thoughts into people's minds. They tempt them to sin. But God helps to save us from the devil.

Children, you told me much about the beautiful angels. You told me how good and holy God made them. Whom do the good angels love? How do the angels see? How much do the angels know? What spirits do you know? How fast can the angels travel? What do the angels do for us? What do we call the angels that watch over us? Why do the angels love us so much? Where does our guardian angel want to lead us? Why did God give us our guardian angels?

What kind of angels were all the angels when God made them? What did God want the angels to do? What would it prove when the angels obeyed God? Why do you always obey God? Why did some of the angels disobey God? Who

was the leader of the bad angels? What did the bad angels think they could do? What made them think that they could get along without God? What do proud people think sometimes? Why do bad people stay away from church? What kind of people disobey God? Whom do people disobey when they commit sin? When will God forgive bad people? What do they have to promise if they want God to forgive them?

Where would the bad angels be now if they had obeyed God? Whom did the bad angels love when they were good? What makes the bad angels miserable now? What kind of people are happy? What kind of people are miserable? What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? What are the bad angels called now? What changed the angels into devils? How long will the devils have to stay in hell? What do the devils suffer in hell? Whom will they never see?

Where do bad people go when they die? With whom will they be in hell? Whom do the devils hate? Why do the devils hate God? Why do the devils try to turn people away from God? Why do they try to keep people from loving God? Why do the devils try to make people hate one another? Who wants all the people to love one

another? Who tries to make people say bad things about others? Who tries to make people fight and quarrel? To what place does the devil try to lead people? What does the devil tempt people to do? How does the devil talk to people? What kind of thoughts does the devil put into people's minds?

How does anybody know when the devil is talking to him? Who is talking to any one when he has bad thoughts? What do good people do when the devil puts bad thoughts into their minds? What do they try to think about then? Whom do they ask to help them? What kind of thoughts does your guardian angel put into your mind? Who whispers into your mind every day to tell you to say your prayers? Who whispers into people's minds and tells them not to say their prayers? Who whispers into your mind to tell you to obey your parents?

Who is always trying to get people to commit sin? Why does the devil want people to fall into sin? To what place is the devil trying to lead people? What makes the devil miserable? Where will the devil have to stay forever? Whose fault is it that the devil has to stay in hell? How could the devil have remained in heaven? What kind of people does the devil hate? Why does the

devil try to turn people against God? Why does the devil hate God? What do you think the devil promises people? Why does the devil never keep his promises? Why is the devil called the "father of lies"? Why does the devil try to get people to tell lies? Who wants us to tell the truth always? Who told Adam and Eve to disobey God?

Do you know what the devil told Adam and Eve? He told them that if they would eat the forbidden fruit, they would be as great as God. They believed him. When they ate the fruit, they fell into sin. They disobeyed God. The devil was glad, for he thought he would have all the people in hell. There they would be his servants. But our Lord took pity and came to free us from the sin of Adam and Eve.

Why do you think the devil tempted Adam and Eve? Why did he want to lead them away from God? When do people become the devil's servants? Whom do people obey when they commit sin? Whom do they disobey when they commit sin? How does God show that He still loves people who fall into sin? What is He willing to do for them? Who tells people to curse and swear? Who do you think was the first ever to curse and swear? Why did the devil curse and

swear against God? Who taught people to take God's holy name in vain?

What Commandment tells you always to honor God's holy name? Why does your guardian angel want you to honor God's name? Whom do you visit when you go to church? Why does the devil try to keep people from going to church? Who is pleased when you are praying quietly in church? Who tries to keep people from going to Confession? Who tries to make people ashamed to tell their sins? Why is your guardian angel glad when you go to Holy Communion? What does your guardian angel want you to do after Holy Communion?

When do you ask God to keep away temptations? Why do you say in the Our Father? — "lead us not into temptation." Who are the devil's servants? When do people obey the devil? Who tries to make people proud? What made Adam and Eve fall into sin? Who made them proud? Why do the devils hate one another? Why do you love all the people in the world? How can you show that you love them? What can you do for bad people? How can you help all the people in the world? What can you do to show that you love the souls in purgatory? What do you do to show that you love your guardian

angel? How do you show that you love God? What does it show when you keep God's Commandments?

Who tries to get people to break the Commandments? What does the devil try to get people to do against the Second Commandment? How does the devil try to get people to break the Third Commandment? How does the devil try to get people to break the Fourth Commandment?

What does the devil try to make people do against the Fifth Commandment? What does the devil tell them to do against the Sixth Commandment? What does he try to make them do against the Seventh Commandment? What does he tell them to do against the Eighth Commandment?

What does it show when people hate one another? What does it show when anybody curses or swears? What does it show when anybody steals? How often does the devil go around to tempt people? Why do you watch all the time? What do you ask God every day to keep you from? Why do you say in the Our Father?—"deliver us from evil."

Why do you pray every day to your guardian angel? Why do you love your guardian angel so much? Why do the devils hate us? Why do

the devils try to make people bad? What kind of people sometimes hate good people? Who tells bad people to laugh at others when they say their prayers? Why do some people say bad things about Catholics? Why does the devil want people to hate Catholics? Why did those bad people nail our Lord to the cross? Why did they put the Apostles to death? How did they put St. Peter to death? They nailed him to a cross with his head down. You know he said he was not worthy to be nailed to the cross as our Lord had been. How did they put St. Paul to death? They cut off his head. St. Peter and St. Paul were put to death in Rome about thirty-five years after our Lord died. June 29th is the feast of St. Peter and St. Paul.

Now, if some one asks you how St. Peter died, what will you say? Where did St. Peter die? The grandest church in the world now stands on the spot where St. Peter was put to death. It is St. Peter's Church. Just beside this church our Holy Father the Pope lives. How was St. Paul put to death? When did St. Paul die? Where did St. Paul die? When is the feast of St. Peter and St. Paul? Why are St. Peter and St. Paul called martyrs? Why were they willing to die for our holy Faith?

Who do you think told those pagans to put St. Peter and St. Paul to death? What were St. Peter and St. Paul teaching the people? Why did the devil hate them so much? Who tries to get people to hate priests? Why does the devil do that? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? Why are all the Apostles called martyrs?

How was St. Andrew put to death? He was nailed to a cross. When they were taking him to nail him to the cross, he said: "O dear cross, you were made holy by the body of my Lord. I am happy to come to you." St. Andrew hung on the cross three days before he died. All the time he was teaching the people to love God. Why do you think they put the Apostle St. Andrew to death? How did they put him to death? The devils were furious at the Apostles because they were taking the people away from them and teaching them to love God. Ever since that time, too, the devils have been trying to do harm to the Catholic Church. They try to make people hate priests, bishops, and Pope.

Do you know how the Apostle St. James was put to death? He was put to death with the sword in Jerusalem where he was bishop. They put him to death about eleven years after our

Lord died. Why were the devils furious against the Apostles? Why do the devils try to make people hate priests, bishops, and Popes? When did the Apostle St. Andrew die? How did they put him to death? When did St. James die? Where was St. James bishop?

Do you know what they did with the Apostle St. John? They put him into a tank of boiling oil, but God saved him. He came out unharmed and lived to be nearly a hundred years old. St. John wrote one of the Gospels in the Bible, and for that reason he is called an evangelist. He also wrote three Epistles in the Bible. They are a part of the New Testament. God told him everything that he wrote in the Gospel and in the Epistles. Now, what could you tell anybody about St. John? Who saved him from death? Why is he called an evangelist? How many Epistles did St. John write? How did St. John know what to write?

Why are all the Apostles called martyrs? For what did they die? Why did the devils hate them? What kind of people does the devil hate? Why does the devil hate good people?

Test Questions

1. Why did God ask the angels to obey Him? 2. Why did Lucifer want to be like God? 3. What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? 4. What kind of sin was it to disobey God? 5. Into what did sin change the angels? 6. How long will the angels suffer in hell? 7. Why do the devils hate God? 8. Why do the devils tempt us to sin?

CHAPTER IX

Heaven

The world is like a beautiful house which God made for us. We are His children. But we live here only until we die. Heaven is our true home. When we die, we go to our true home. There our Heavenly Father is waiting for us with love. There we will be happy forever. We use the things of this world to help us to get to heaven.

Children, you have told me many wonderful things that our Heavenly Father has done for us. You have told me how He loves us. Now, why did God make this world? Why did God make a place for us to live in? Whose children are we? Why did God make the world so beautiful? What is the beautiful green grass like? What are the mountains and the lakes and the rivers like? What is like the ceiling of this house? What are the sun, the moon, and the stars like? What did God put in the world to make us happy? How do we get things to eat? How do we get things to wear? Why did God give us the animals? What did God put in the oceans and lakes and rivers for us? How do we get

bread to eat? Why did God put sweet sounds in many things? How can we make others happy with our voice? Why did God give us ears?

How are you able to see all the beauty in the world? Why did God give us such wonderful eyes? Who gave you your mother and father? Who taught your mother and father to love you and take care of you? Who sent your guardian angel to watch over you? How long will you live in this world? What will happen when you die? What will they do with your body? How long will your soul live? What can your soul do when your body dies? How can you know things after you die? What is your soul called? What other spirits do you know? How much can God do? How much does God know? Where do good people go when they die? Where is our true home? Who is waiting for us in heaven? What is God to us? What are we to God? To whom are we going when we die?

How does God want us to use the things of this world? To what place should they help us to go when we die? Why does God want us to keep from loving the things of this world too much? What place does God want us to think about every day? How can money help us to get to

heaven? How does everything in the world show that God loves us? How much more beautiful do you think heaven is than this world? How long shall we live in heaven? Whom shall we love forever in heaven? Who will love us forever? What shall we know about God in heaven? When shall we see God? How often shall we be able to talk with God in heaven? What will God give us in heaven? How many people will love one another in heaven? What saints shall we be with in heaven?

Which saints shall you be glad to see there? What shall you say to the Blessed Virgin Mary? What shall you ask her about our Lord when He was a little child? What shall you ask her about Bethlehem? What will she say to you because you love our Lord? Whose mother is the Blessed Virgin Mary? What do you think she will tell you about St. Joseph? What do you think St. Joseph will tell you about our Lord when He was a boy? What do you think you shall say to the Apostles? What do you think St. Peter will tell you about Gethsemane? What do you think he will tell you about Rome? Who was the first Pope of the Catholic Church? What do you think you will talk to the other Apostles about? How many of the saints will know you? How

many of the angels will know you? When shall you be able to see the angels? Where will your guardian angel be then? How many saints in heaven will love you? How many angels will love you?

What people whom you know now will be in heaven? What two people do you love best on earth? How long shall you be with your father and mother in heaven? How long shall you love your mother and father? How long will your mother and father love you? How often shall you be able to talk with your mother and father in heaven? What do you think you shall like to talk about with them? How shall you feel when you meet your brothers and sisters in heaven?

What do you think God will give us in heaven? How happy shall we be in heaven? Why can nobody be sick in heaven? What is the only place in which nobody ever is sad? Where is it that nobody ever suffers? When will our bodies be joined to our souls again? What will our bodies be like in heaven? How will our bodies look? How long will our bodies be young and beautiful? How quickly shall we be able to travel in heaven? What kind of eyes do you think we shall have? What do you think there will be to see in heaven? What do you think we shall hear in heaven? What

kind of words do you think people will speak to us there? What kind of a voice do you think we shall have in heaven? What kind of music do you think there will be in heaven?

Why does God want us to keep from loving the things of this world too much? What does God want us to think about? What are the things of this world good for? Where do they help us to go if we use them right? How can you do good with money? How many things teach us to love God? Why does it make us happy to think about heaven? Why are good people always happy? How long will we live in this world? How long will we live in heaven? When might you die? What are you getting ready for in this world? How long will eternity last? Where will we be happy for eternity? What does this life prepare us for? Where will we have our true life? Who told us about heaven? Why did God tell us about heaven? Where can you read about heaven?

St. Paul wrote several epistles or letters. They form part of the Bible. In one of these epistles he wrote — of course God told him the words — "Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man, what things God hath prepared for them that love him."

(1 Cor. 2, 9.) St. Paul wrote this in his letter to the Corinthians. He says that the things of heaven are wonderfully beautiful. No one on earth has ever seen such beautiful things. And no one could ever imagine how wonderful they are. And God has prepared all these things for us. Why did God want us to know about heaven? For what did God make us? Why did God put us in this world first? For what are we getting ready in this world? What must we do to get to heaven? What do we do when we serve God? How do we know what God wants us to do? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

Why do you love to serve God? Where do people go who serve God? What do people believe who want to go to heaven? How do we know all that God teaches? What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Whom do good people love? Why do you love all the people in the world? How can you help all the people in the world? What do you ask God to do for all the people in the world? What do you ask God to do for bad people? When will God forgive bad people?

What kind of people love God? Why would you like to see all the people good? Why does it make you happy to know that others love God?

How many people does God want to go to heaven? How does God help all the people to get to heaven? Why does He give them the Catholic Church? Why does He give them their guardian angels? Why does He give them the Commandments? Why are good people happy? What can sick people think about to make them happy? When will people that are sad be joyful? When will poor people be rich? How long will rich people have their money in this world? How long will we have everything in heaven? For what do good people use the things of this world? Why did God put us in this world? What are we preparing for? Where is our true home? Who is waiting for us in heaven?

TEST QUESTIONS

1. When shall we leave this earth? 2. Where is our true home? 3. When do we go to our true home? 4. What shall we have in heaven? 5. Where shall we see God? 6. How long shall we be happy in heaven? 7. Where shall we be united with our dear ones? 8. For what did God make us?

CHAPTER X

The Happiness of Heaven

God made us to be happy with Him forever in heaven. Heaven is our true home. In heaven we shall be with our loved ones. We shall see God face to face. There can be no sorrow or suffering in heaven. Our bodies will be glorified. There we shall be happy with all the angels and saints forever. To go to heaven we must be good. We pray to God every day to ask Him to help us. We also ask the angels and saints to pray for us.

Children, you spoke about heaven the last time. Let us talk about heaven again. I am sure you have been thinking about it. Tell me, why did God make the world? How long shall we live on this earth? What will happen to us when we die? What will happen to our body then? What will happen to our soul? What kind of people go to heaven? What kind of people go to hell? What can you do after your body dies? What is your soul called? What other spirits do you know? What can the angels do? Who is the greatest of all spirits? How much does God know? How much can God do? Why

did God make this world so beautiful? How many things show that God loves us? Whose children are we all? Where is our true home? What does God want us to do with the things in this world? Where will they help us to go if we use them right?

Why do you like to think about heaven? What kind of place do you think heaven is? Who is waiting for us there? Why does God wish to have us with Him? What do you think God has prepared for His children in heaven? Why do you love God more than anything in the world? Whom did the saints love all their lives? Who made the saints so holy? Why were the martyrs willing to die?

It was to show their love for God. You know there were many young saints among the martyrs. St. Cecilia was a young girl. The pagans tried to make her deny our holy Faith. But she would not. They tried in every way to make her bad. But she prayed to God and God helped her. Then they killed her, and so she became a martyr. St. Cecilia died about seventeen hundred years ago. It was about 230 years after our Lord was born. Her soul went to heaven when she died. Her body was buried in the catacombs. Now her body is kept in the Church of St. Cecilia at

Rome. Why do you think St. Cecilia was happy when she was dying? What kind of people are happy? Why did the pagans kill St. Cecilia? Where did St. Cecilia's soul go when she died? Where did they bury her body? Who helped St. Cecilia to be true to God? Who helps you to be true to God? How did St. Cecilia show that she loved God? How often do you think she used to pray? How often do you think she went to Mass? How do you think she acted toward others? St. Cecilia loved to read the Gospels. She liked also to sing at Mass. That is why she is always pictured playing the organ. St. Urban I was Pope when St. Cecilia died.

What did the saints think most about? Why do you think they were glad to be poor? What have the saints now in heaven? Why do you think the saints were glad to suffer? For what were the saints preparing in this world? Why did they think so much about God and heaven? How did that help them to love God more than ever? How long will we have the good things of this world? How long will we have the good things of heaven? What happens to people who live a long time in this world? How long shall we live in heaven? Tell me some of the dear ones you hope to be with in heaven.

What do you think will be the greatest joy in heaven? Whom shall you see face to face there? What shall you be able to see in God there? What shall you know about God in heaven? What shall you know about the Blessed Trinity? Which divine persons shall you see? When was our Lord born in this world? Who is our Lord's mother? How do you think you shall feel when you see how wonderful God is? What shall you know about God's love in heaven? Whom will God love there? What will God do to show that He loves us?

When shall you have your body again? What will God do for your body when He brings it back to life? Why is God able to bring your body back to life after it has turned to dust? How much can God do? Why will God make your body glorious and beautiful in heaven? Why will God fill you with joy and happiness in heaven? How do we know that God will do all this for us? Who told us about heaven? What Church teaches us what God told us about heaven?

What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? Where can we read about heaven?

Who wrote the Bible? How did God write the Bible? Who will be very, very happy on the last day of the world? What will our Lord say to the just on the last day? We can read about this in the Gospel of St. Matthew. You know the Gospel of St. Matthew is a part of the Bible. It is a part of the New Testament. In the Gospel of St. Matthew you can read how Christ will judge all the people of the world on the last day. All the nations of the world will be gathered before Him. He will place the just on the right and the wicked on the left. He will then tell the wicked to leave Him and to go into hell forever. But our Lord will say to the just: "Come, you blessed of my Father, come with me to heaven to be happy forever." (St. Matthew 25, 34.) This is called the General Judgment. Now, what would you say if some one asked you where you can read about the General Judgment? In what part of the Bible is the Gospel of St. Matthew? Who was St. Matthew? He was one of the twelve Apostles. Our Lord called Him to come and follow Him. Like the other Apostles, St. Matthew went with our Lord for three years. Who ordained St. Matthew priest? What did St. Matthew do for the people? Who told St. Matthew what to write in the Bible? Where is St. Matthew now?

Where are all the Apostles now? When will you see the Apostles?

How did the Apostles die? Why did the pagans put them to death? How old was St. John when he died? When will St. John's body be young and strong and beautiful? When shall we never be sick any more? Where will there be no sorrow or suffering? Where will there be no death? Where will the lame be cured? What will happen then to those who have lost a hand or a foot? What will happen to the blind in heaven? What will happen to deaf people in heaven? What will happen to old people in heaven? How long will people be young and strong in heaven? Where shall we not have to eat to live? What will God give us for our taste in heaven? What will God give us to hear in heaven? When will poor people be rich? How long will they have everything in heaven? How long do rich people have their money on earth? How do we know so much about heaven? Why did God tell us about heaven?

Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? What does the Catholic Church teach us to do? What Church taught the saints and martyrs to be good? Who helps the Catholic Church to teach us? Why do you pray every morning and

evening? What do you ask God to do for you? For what do you thank God every day? Whose house is the church? Whom do you visit when you go to church? Why do you kneel and fold your hands when you pray? What do you do when you enter the church? Whom do you adore when you genuflect?

Who blesses holy water? What evil does holy water drive away from us? What sacrifice does the priest offer in the Church? Who was the first ever to offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? What sacrifice did the Apostles offer? Why do we worship God? How do we show that we love God? What do we do to be good? Why do we pray and go to church and to Holy Communion? Where will we go when we die if we worship God all our life? What Church taught St. Cecilia to be good and true? When did St. Cecilia die? What Church taught St. Francis to be good and holy? When did St. Francis live? Why do you like to do all that the Catholic Church teaches? Why do you try every day to be good? Why do you pray for others? What can you do for bad people? Why do you wish bad people to be good? Why do you wish that all the people would love God?

Why do you like to help others? Why do you

always try to be kind to others? Why do you try to be quiet when others are studying? How do you like to speak to others? When shall we all be together? Whose children are we all? When shall we go home to our Heavenly Father? Why do you like to obey your father and mother? Who taught you to love and honor your father and mother? How long shall you be with your father and mother in heaven?

Tell me now some of the things you can do to be good. Tell me some of the things God wants you to do every day. What does God want you to do for others? Why do you always try to use good manners? What does it show when you are polite to anybody? Why do you always respect others? What do good boys do when they meet a lady whom they know? Why are you happy when others show respect for your mother? Who is the holiest woman that ever lived? Why do you love and honor the Blessed Virgin Mary? How can you show that you love others? How many people does God love? How many people do you love? How many people does God wish to go to heaven? Why do you pray for others? What can the saints do for us? Why do we pray to the saints? Why do we pray to the angels?

When shall we leave all the things in this world? What do you think people ought to do with the things of this world? Why should we think more of heaven than of earth? When might you die? What are you getting ready for in this world? Why shall you keep from loving this world too much?

Now what could you tell anybody about heaven? Tell me all that you think about it. Tell me the things that will make you happy there. Tell me about your soul and your body. Tell me about the saints and the angels. Tell me about God. Tell me what you do to be good.

Test Questions

1. Where shall we be perfectly happy? 2. When shall we see God face to face? 3. Where shall we be free from sorrow and suffering? 4. When shall we have our bodies again? 5. What will happen to our bodies in heaven? 6. What are the joys of earth compared to the joys of heaven? 7. Why has God prepared heaven for us? 8. When shall we know the true love of God?

CHAPTER XI

Hell

When the angels disobeyed God they were turned into devils. Then they were sent to hell forever. Adam and Eve also disobeyed God. But our Lord came to save us from hell. In hell the bad people will burn forever. They will be in real fire. They will be separated from God forever. All in hell will hate one another forever.

Children, you told me many beautiful things about the angels. You told me how good and holy God made them. What do our guardian angels do for us? How do our guardian angels talk to us? How do you think the angels can talk with one another? How fast can the angels travel? What part of us is like the angels? What is our soul called? What can our soul do after our body dies? What part of us is made to God's likeness?

What did God want the angels to do when He made them? Why did God want the angels to obey Him? How could they show that they loved Him? What did God promise to do for the angels if they would obey Him? How long

would they be in heaven then? What great sin did some of the angels commit? What made the bad angels disobey God? Who was the leader of the bad angels? What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? How long will they be in hell? What are the bad angels called now? What changed the angels into devils? What is the worst thing in the world? What does it mean to commit a sin? When do people turn against God? What is the only thing that can send people to hell? What kind of sin sends people to hell? What made Adam and Eve bad? Who told Adam and Eve to disobey God?

Do you know what form the devil took when he talked to Eve? He took the form of a serpent. He told her to disobey God. You can read all about this in the Book of Genesis. What form did the devil take when he tempted Eve? Where can you read about Cain and Abel? Whom did Cain kill? What kind of sin was that?

Where would all the people in the world go when they die if our Lord had not come to save us? When will God forgive people that commit sin? What do they have to do if they want God to forgive them? What do they have to promise God? What Sacrament do they have to receive? Where does God want all the people to go when they die?

What kind of people go to heaven? What do we have to do to be good? How do we know what God wants us to do? Why did God give us the Catholic Church? Why did God give us the Bible? Why did God give us the Sacraments? Why does God want us all to go to heaven?

Whose fault is it if anybody goes to hell? How long will sinners have to stay in hell? Who will hate them in hell? With whom will they be in hell? How long will bad people burn in the fire of hell? Who will torment the wicked in hell? When will the people in hell have their bodies again?

Who is always trying to make people commit sins? Why does the devil want people to commit sins? Why does the devil want to take people to hell? Why does he want to take them away from God? Whom do people obey when they commit sin? Who is the father of lies? What does the devil promise people when he tries to lead them to commit sin? How do people feel after they commit sin? What kind of people are happy? Why does the devil leave when you make the Sign of the Cross? Whom does holy water help drive away from us? Why do you say in the Our Father? — "lead us not into temptation." Why do you say?—"deliver us from evil."

When will the Last Judgment take place? How many people will be at the Last Judgment? What will God say to the good people then? What will He say to the wicked people?

What kind of gods did the pagans worship? Why did the pagans put so many Christians to death? Whom did they want the Christians to worship? Why were these Christians willing to die rather than worship false gods? How many of the Apostles were martyrs? Very many Popes were also martyrs. Nearly all the Popes, for three hundred years after St. Peter, were martyrs. They died for our holy Faith. Now tell me how many Popes died for our holy Faith the first three hundred years? Who told the pagans to put the Christians to death? Why does the devil hate the Pope and the bishops and priests?

Do you know where the Christians used to go to Mass for nearly three hundred years after our Lord died? They used to go to Mass in deep caves. They dug those caves, which were many miles long, under the ground near Rome. Here they used to bury their dead also, and they became big cemeteries for Christians. They are called catacombs. Why did the early Christians have Mass under the ground? Why did the pagans kill so many thousands of Christians? What

were these underground cemeteries called? Who made the pagans hate the Christians?

Who told us about hell? What did God tell us about hell? Who told us that bad people burn in hell? How long did God say that bad people will burn in hell? Who told us about the devil? How do we know that the bad angels disobeyed God? What Church teaches us all that God told about hell? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Where can we read about the devils? What does the Bible tell us about the devils? Who wrote the Bible? How did God write the Bible?

You can read about hell in many parts of the Bible. You can read about it in St. Matthew's Gospel (Ch. 24). There our Lord tells how on the last day the wicked will go into the fire of hell forever. Now in what part of the Gospel can you read about hell? What did our Lord say about the wicked? In which Testament of the Bible is St. Matthew's Gospel? What does the Catholic Church teach about hell? Who told the Catholic Church all these things about hell? Why does the Catholic Church always teach the truth?

How long will the Catholic Church teach the truth?

With whom shall we be in heaven? How long will God love us in heaven? With whom will the wicked be in hell? How long will they be separated from God? Where do you think there will always be cursing and swearing? Why do the devils curse and swear? Why do they hate God? Who do you think was the first ever to curse and swear? Who teaches bad people to curse and swear? Why do bad people take our Lord's holy name in vain? Why do you honor our Lord's holy name?

Where do people always hate one another? Where will we all love one another forever? When will our Lord bring all the people back to life? What will our Lord say to the good people at the Last Judgment? What will our Lord say to the wicked? What is the worst thing in the world? What does it mean to commit sin? Who tries to get people to disobey God? When does the devil go around among people? How does the devil talk to people? What kind of thoughts does he put into their minds? Who puts good thoughts into your mind? What kind of people die happy? Why do you all love one another? Whose children are we? When shall we be united with our Heavenly Father?

What is the most terrible thing anybody can think about? How long will bad people be separated from God? What do you think is the worst thing about hell? How long will the wicked be separated from God? Who tries to get people to hate one another? Why does the devil want people to hate one another? Who wants us all to love one another? How many people does God love? What is God always willing to do for bad people?

Why do you pray for people who are unkind to you? What do you think the martyrs did for the pagans who put them to death? What did our Lord do for those who nailed Him to the cross? How do you ask God, in the Our Father, to save you from hell? When do you ask Him to keep you from the temptations of the devil? Why do you kneel and fold your hands when you pray? Why do you genuflect in the church? Whom do we adore? Why did the early Christians worship God in the catacombs? Who taught the pagans to kill the Christians? When was St. Peter put to death? How did the pagans nail St. Peter to the cross? What beautiful church stands on the place where St. Peter died? Where does God want all the people to go when they die? What do we have to do to get to heaven? Why

do you like to obey God? When do people disobey God? Who were the first to disobey God? What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? What happens to people who disobey God all their life? What kind of sin sends people to hell?

Test Questions

1. What changed the angels into devils? 2. What sent the bad angels to hell? 3. Where do people who disobey God go when they die? 4. What is the only thing that can send people to hell? 5. How long will hell last? 6. How long will the wicked burn in hell? 7. Who will never see God? 8. Who will dwell with the devils?

CHAPTER XII

The Commandments

God gave us the Ten Commandments to help us to get to heaven. He gave them to us because He loves us. When we keep the Commandments, we show that we love God. God sent the Catholic Church to teach us to keep the Commandments. Our Lord put the Ten Commandments into two Commandments. One is to love God. The other is to love all the people in the world.

Children, you told me many wonderful things about God. You spoke about heaven and about the angels. I am sure you like to think about these beautiful things. Why did God make you? Why does God wish to have you with Him in heaven? Why did God tell you so many wonderful things about Himself? Why did God speak to the patriarchs and prophets? What did our Lord come to teach? Why did our Lord send the Apostles? Why did God give us the Catholic Church? What does the Catholic Church teach us to do? What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Why does the Catholic Church always teach the truth? Why

did God give us our guardian angels? How do our guardian angels help us to be good? How do our guardian angels speak to us?

Why did God give us the Ten Commandments? Why does God want us to be good? Why does God want us to go to heaven?

How do the Commandments show that God loves us? Whose children are we all? Where do the Commandments help us to go? Where is our true home?

Why do you try to keep the Commandments so well? What are we doing when we keep the Commandments? What do we have to do to be good? Why, then, did God give us the Ten Commandments? Who is our Heavenly Father?

How do we show that we love God? Why do you like to keep God's Commandments? How many people does God want to keep His Commandments? What kind of people refuse to keep God's Commandments? What can you do for people who do not keep God's Commandments? Why do you pray for them?

Why are you sorry for people who don't try to keep God's Commandments? What can you ask God to do for them? Why are you happy when you keep God's Commandments? Why are good people always happy? When will poor people

be rich? When will sick people be well? When will old people be young again?

Can you tell me the story about Moses and what happened to him when he was a little baby? Where do you think you can read about Moses? Yes; in the Bible you can read about Moses. It is in the second book of the Bible. This is called the Book of Exodus. The Book of Exodus tells all about Moses. It tells how God called him to lead the Israelites out of Egypt. There they were slaves. The people of Egypt worshiped false gods. They made these gods out of gold, silver, wood, and stone.

When Moses came down from Mount Sinai, he found that the Israelites were adoring a golden calf which they had made from their jewelry. When Moses saw this, he dashed the two stone tablets to pieces, and told the people what a great sin they had committed against God. The people were very sorry for their sin after Moses had spoken to them, and promised to be true to God after that. Then Moses went up again on Mount Sinai and God gave him the Commandments again. They were carved on two stones just as the first had been. All this you can read in the Book of Exodus, the second book of the Bible. You know the first part of the Bible is called the

Old Testament. The Book of Exodus is a part of the Old Testament. Genesis is the first book of the Old Testament.

Now, what could you tell anybody about Moses? Where can you read about Moses? In what book of the Bible can you read about Moses? Where were the Israelites when God called Moses to lead them? What kind of gods did the Egyptians worship? Why did Moses break the first two tablets with the Commandments?

What did Moses say when he saw the golden calf? How did the people feel after Moses talked to them? How did Moses get the Commandments again? What is the first part of the Bible called?

Do you know why it is called the Old Testament? It is called the Old Testament because it contains the Old Law of God. Our Lord gave us the New Law. That is why the second part of the Bible is called the New Testament.

What is the first book of the Old Testament? What is the second book of the Old Testament? What Law does the New Testament contain? What Law does the Old Testament contain?

The Book of Leviticus is the third book of the Bible. Here God told the Israelites how to worship Him. He told them how to offer sacrifices

and bless things. He told them all the ceremonies they were to have. All this you can read in the Book of Leviticus. We have beautiful ceremonies in the Catholic Church by which we show honor to God. What does the Book of Leviticus tell about? Where can you read about the ceremonies of the Old Law? Why do we have so many beautiful ceremonies in the Catholic Church?

How long has the Catholic Church taught the Commandments? Who was the first to teach the Commandments in the Catholic Church? Who taught the people the Commandments just after our Lord died? Who have always taught the Commandments in the Catholic Church? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Why does God want us all to know the Commandments? Why do you like to keep the Commandments? Why do you always try to do all that God wants you to do? Why did the saints keep the Commandments so well?

Did you ever hear of St. Polycarp? He was a very holy bishop in Africa. He died about a hundred and fifty years after our Lord was born. You know there were many Christians in Africa in those days. The holy bishop taught the people to love God and to keep the Commandments.

He taught them to pray and to go to Mass and Holy Communion. The pagans hated him because he was so good. When he was eighty-four years old, he still worked hard teaching his people. The pagans seized this good old bishop and put him upon a pile of wood which they had made. Then they set fire to the wood. But the flames would not burn St. Polycarp. The pagans then cut off his head with a sword.

There have been thousands and thousands of saints in the Catholic Church who loved God very much. What made the saints happy? Where are the saints now? Where was St. Polycarp bishop? How did the pagans put him to death? You know the pagans tried to get St. Polycarp to deny God. They said they felt sorry for an old man. But St. Polycarp told them that he was happy to die for God. He said he had served God for eighty years and now he was glad to go to Him in heaven. Just think, that was nearly eighteen hundred years ago! How long has St. Polycarp been happy in heaven? Why will you always try to be true to God? How many people does God want to keep His Commandments? What Commandment did God give to Adam and Eve? What happened to Adam and Eve when they disobeyed God? What happened

to the angels that disobeyed God? How were they changed when they disobeyed God? What kind of sin is it to break the Commandments? What kind of people disobey God? Whom do they disobey when they break the Commandments? What can you do for people who disobey God?

When will God forgive those who break His Commandments? What do they have to promise God? What do they have to be sorry for? What Sacrament do they have to receive? What do they do when they receive the Sacrament of Penance? To whom do they tell their sins? What do they say to show the priest that they are sorry for their sins? When do they say the Act of Contrition?

What can you do with your mind? Why cannot the dumb animals think? Why does not God give Commandments to the dumb animals? What happens to them when they die? Why did God give us free will? What does God want us to choose? How do you know how to choose good? Why do you always try to think about what you are going to do?

How do you think the Apostles kept the Commandments? Who helps us keep the Commandments? What does God give us to help us keep

the Commandments? How does God's grace help us keep the Commandments? When does God give us a new life for our soul? When do we get God's grace? How do you think St. Cecilia kept God's Commandments? When did St. Cecilia live? How do you think St. Polycarp kept God's Commandments? Where was St. Polycarp bishop? When did St. Polycarp die? What helped the saints keep the Commandments? What helps you keep the Commandments? What helps all good people keep the Commandments?

Who gave us all the Commandments in two Commandments? What two Commandments did our Lord give us? What is the first of these two Commandments? What is the second? We can read about these two Commandments of love in the Gospel of St. Matthew, 22, 37–39. You can also read about the Commandments of love in the Gospels of St. Mark and St. Luke. Now, could you tell anybody in what part of the Bible is the Gospel of St. Matthew? Where can you read about the two Commandments of love? How many Gospels are there in the New Testament? What are the four Gospels of the New Testament?

You know the four Gospels all give our Lord's teachings. All four give the same teachings.

After all, they are really but one Gospel. They are the Gospel of Jesus Christ. Now, if somebody asked you what teaching the four Gospels give us, what would you say? Why are the four Gospels really one Gospel? *Read the Commandments of love, St. Matthew 22, 37; St. Mark 12, 30; St. Luke 10, 27. Ask the children to say the Ten Commandments.*

Whose words are those that you have said? Where did God write those words? In what part of the Bible did God write the Commandments? What Church teaches us God's Commandments? What kind of people keep God's Commandments? How do we show that we love God? How do we keep God's Commandments when we love God with our whole heart? Why do you love God with your whole heart? What shows that you love God with your whole heart? What do you do every day to show that you love God? What do you do on Sundays and Holy Days to show that you love God? What Sacraments do you receive often to show your love for God? What do you do for your parents to show that you love God? What do you do in school to show that you love God? How do you act toward others to show that you love God? How many people do you love? Why do you love all the people

in the world? Why does God love all the people in the world?

What does it show when you pray for bad people? What would you like to do for bad people? Why would you like to make them all good? Whom would they love if they were good? What can you do for poor people to show that you love God? What does it show when you help sick people? Why do you like to speak kind words to others? Why do you try to help one another? Why are you quiet in school when others are studying? Why do you pick up others' coats or hats if you see them lying on the floor? Why do you pick up others' things if they fall? Why do you use good manners at table? What does it show when you respect others? Why do you always forgive those who are unkind to you? Whom did our Lord forgive when He was hanging on the cross?

Who taught us to love our enemies? Whom did the Apostles love? How many people did the saints and martyrs love? What did the Apostle St. Andrew do when he was hanging on the cross? St. Stephen was the first martyr. They stoned him to death in Jerusalem. It was only about a year after our Lord died on the cross. When he was dying, St. Stephen prayed for those who were

stoning him to death. He asked God to forgive them. You can read about St. Stephen in the Acts of the Apostles. (Acts 7, 58.) What did St. Stephen do when they were stoning him to death? When did St. Stephen die? Where can you read about St. Stephen? In what part of the Bible are the Acts of the Apostles? Why did the saints love all the people in the world? Who are God's children? How many people does God love? Why do you love all the people in the world?

Now tell me all that you know about the Commandments. Tell me all about how God gave them to us. Tell me why God gave them to us. Tell me about the saints.

Test Questions

1. What are the Ten Commandments of God? 2. Why did God give us the Ten Commandments? 3. What way do the Ten Commandments show us? 4. What do the Ten Commandments show about God? 5. To whom did God give the Ten Commandments? 6. What do we show when we keep the Commandments? 7. What are the Ten Commandments called? 8. What Church teaches us the Ten Commandments?

CHAPTER XIII

The First Commandment

"I am the Lord thy God; thou shalt not have strange gods before me."

God made all things. God gives us life. God rules the world and all things in it. God is the Lord of heaven and earth. God said: "I am the Lord thy God." We must serve God all our lives. We must pray to God. We must believe in Him and hope in Him. We must love Him.

Children, I would like to hear you tell the story again about Moses and the Commandments. Tell me where we can read about them. In what part of the Bible are they written? Perhaps you would like to tell me the story of the world. Where does everything come from? Tell me how everything makes you think about God. What can you tell me about the sun, the moon, and the stars? Tell me what God does for us every day. You might talk about the things we eat, the things we wear, the things that make us happy here. Where do we get our life? At first we are little babies. What follows? How do we grow? What happens at last? What happens when we

die? Where did heaven and earth come from? Who rules heaven and earth? What did God say in the First Commandment?

Now, somebody might ask you how God rules the world. I would like to hear you tell what God does for the world. For what do you thank God every day? What do you do to serve God? What Church teaches us what God wants us to do? Why did God say?—"Thou shalt not have strange gods before me." What kind of gods did the pagans worship? Why do we worship God alone? How long has God been God? How long will God be God? To whom do we offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? Whom do we honor when we offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? What does the priest offer to God in the Sacrifice of the Mass? Under what form does the priest offer our Lord's body and blood?

Perhaps you could tell me about the sacrifice of the Old Law. Cain and Abel offered sacrifices. Noah offered sacrifice when he came out of the ark. I am sure you can tell me about these sacrifices and where you can read about them. Do you know what sacrifice God told Abraham to offer? He told him to offer his son Isaac. Abraham was very sad; but he was willing to obey God. So he took Isaac up on a mountain to offer

him as a sacrifice. Then God sent an angel to stop him. (Book of Genesis.)

How does the priest worship God? Why is the Sacrifice of the Mass the best worship we can give to God? What does the priest offer in the Sacrifice of the Mass? How do the people worship God? Why do you genuflect when you enter the church? Whom do you worship when you go to church? Whom do you worship when you pray? What prayer did our Lord teach us? What do you call God when you say the Lord's Prayer?

Our Lord taught the Our Father to the Apostles. That is why it is called the Lord's Prayer. You can read about this in the Bible. It is written in the Gospel of St. Matthew, Ch. 6, 9.

Tell me some of the things we ask of God in the Our Father. How do we pray that all may honor God's name? Why do we say? — "hallowed be thy name." How do we pray that all may obey God? What do you mean when you say? — "thy kingdom come." Why do you say? — "thy will be done." How do we ask God for all that we need every day? How do we ask God to forgive us? What do we ask God to keep us from?

What prayer do we say to honor God's holy mother? Who first said the first part of the

Hail Mary? When did the Angel Gabriel say this to the Blessed Virgin Mary? You know God sent the Angel Gabriel to tell the Blessed Virgin that she was to be our Lord's mother. You can read about this in the Gospel of St. Luke, Ch. 2.

Why do you say the Apostles' Creed? What do we say that we believe when we say the Apostles' Creed? Who taught us the things in the Apostles' Creed? What Church teaches us those things now?

Whom do we adore? Why is it a sin to adore any other than God? Why do we kneel when we pray? What kind of gods did the pagans adore? Whom do we adore when we kneel before the crucifix? Whom do we honor when we pray before a statue of the Blessed Virgin? Why do we pray before statues of the saints? Whom do we honor when we honor relics of the saints? Why do we honor the cross? Why did our Lord die upon the cross?

Do you know a large part of our Lord's cross is kept in a church at Rome? Our Lord's cross was found in Jerusalem by St. Helena, who was the mother of the Roman Emperor Constantine. She lived about three hundred years after our Lord died. Constantine, her son, became a

Christian. He was the first Roman Emperor to be a Christian. What would you do if you saw a piece of our Lord's cross? Who found our Lord's cross in Jerusalem? Who was St. Helena's son? When did St. Helena live? Who was the first Christian Emperor of Rome? Why do you honor the cross so much? Why do we have crosses on our churches? Why do we have the crucifix in our homes?

Now, you might tell me what the angels and saints do for you. Tell me what you know about the saints. Tell me how they lived on earth. Why do you pray to the angels and the saints? Where are the saints? Why do you honor the saints? Why do you honor the Blessed Virgin more than all the other saints? Tell me some other saints whom you know. Perhaps you know some of the Apostles. What happened to the Apostles? Tell me how they died. Tell me about the Holy Innocents.

I will tell you about a boy saint. His name was St. Tarsicius. He lived at Rome about seven hundred years ago. At that time they used to allow people to carry the Blessed Sacrament, and one day, as St. Tarsicius was carrying the Blessed Sacrament to a sick person, he met some pagans. They asked him to give them the Blessed Sacra-

ment, but this he would not do. Because he refused they killed him and he became a martyr though he was only a boy. What can you ask St. Tarsicius to do for you? What can you ask St. Cecilia to do for you? When did St. Cecilia live? When did St. Tarsicius live? What was St. Tarsicius guarding when the pagans killed him?

What can you do for the souls in purgatory? Why do you like to pray for the souls in purgatory? What will the souls in purgatory do for you when they go to heaven? What does the priest do for the souls in purgatory? How does it help the souls in purgatory to have Mass said for them?

Why do you believe all that God told us? Why must all that God tells us be true? What Church teaches us all that God told us? What does it mean to have faith? What prayer do you say to show that you have faith? Say the Act of Faith. Tell me what you said to God then. Why do we believe all that the Catholic Church teaches? Now, you might tell me something about the Catholic Church. Somebody might ask you how the Catholic Church came to be and how you know it always teaches the truth. What kind of people have faith? Why must everybody have faith? What do you believe about the

Blessed Trinity? Who told us about the Blessed Trinity? Why do you believe everything in the Bible? How do we know what the Bible means?

Tell me some of the things God has promised us. He has surely promised us many good things. What has God promised to do for us when we die? What does He promise to do for our soul? What does He promise to do for our body? When will He bring our body back to life? What has God promised to give us in heaven? How long has God promised to make us happy? How long has God promised to love us? What has God promised to do for us on earth? What help has He promised us here? Why has God promised to help us be good? What kind of people keep their promises? Why are you sure that God will keep His promises? What does it mean to have hope? What do you hope God will do when you die? What do you hope God will give you in heaven? Whom do you hope to see in heaven? With whom do you hope to be in heaven? What do you hope God will do for your body in heaven? How long do you hope God will love you?

What do you hope God will help you do on earth? What do you hope God will help you believe? What kind of thoughts do you hope

God will put into your mind? What prayer do you say to show that you have hope? Say the Act of Hope. What did you say to God then? What do you hope God will do for sinners? What do you hope God will give you when you die? What do you hope God will help you gain? Why do you say the Act of Faith every day? Why do you need to have faith? Why do you say the Act of Hope every day? Why do you need to have hope?

Tell me some of the reasons why you love God. You have often spoken of God's goodness. Why do you love God more than all else? Where do all good things come from? Where do your mother and father come from? Where does all the love in the world come from? Why do you love all the people in the world? Tell me about God's children. Tell me how God wants us to live together on earth. Why does God love all the people in the world? What prayer do you say to show that you love God and all the people in the world?

Say the Act of Love. What did you say to God then? Tell me the different parts of that beautiful prayer. To love God and our neighbor means to have charity. Faith, hope, and charity are divine virtues. They come to us from God.

Why does God give us the virtue of faith? What does He want us to believe? Why does God give us the virtue of hope? Of what does God want us to be sure? Why does God give us the virtue of charity? Whom does God want us to love? Which do you think is the most beautiful virtue? Why is charity the most beautiful of all virtues? Do you remember what St. John, the Apostle, used to say when he was a very old man? What Commandments do people keep who love God? How long do you hope to love God? How long will God love you in heaven?

Test Questions

1. What is the First Commandment? 2. Who is the Lord and Maker of heaven and earth? 3. What gods did the pagans worship? 4. When does God tell us that He alone is Lord and God? 5. What must we do to be good? 6. When do we talk with God? 7. Why do we believe and hope in God? 8. Why do we love God?

CHAPTER XIV

The Second Commandment

"Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain."

God is our Father who loves us. We honor and love His holy name because we love Him. The name of God has a great meaning in our lives. Jesus is the most sacred of all names. It means Saviour.

It is always a pleasure, children, to hear you talk of God. Tell me again to-day about our Heavenly Father. But first of all you would perhaps tell me about those who are very dear to you. Who are the two people most dear to you on earth? Why do you show so much love and respect for your father and mother? Why do you always speak respectfully of your father and mother? How do you like to hear others speak of your parents? Why would it make you feel sad if some one spoke disrespectfully of your father or mother? How do you like to hear others speak of your brothers and sisters? Why do you always try to mention others' names with respect? Why do you love others? Why do you love God? What is God to us all?

Tell me some of the things our Heavenly Father has done for us. See how many good things we have. You have life. You have your parents. You have a beautiful world to live in. You have all that you need for your life. You have many things to make you happy. *Mention these things one by one, if necessary, to guide them in telling about God.*

Why did God do all this for you? What are you to God? Perhaps you would like to tell me about the angels. You have spoken before of our guardian angels. You also told me how God spoke to us. What does all that show about God? Why did God send His angels to watch over us? Why did God tell us about Himself, about the angels, and about heaven? I would be glad if you told me some of the things God intends to do for us. Of course, I know we shall all die some day. Tell me about heaven. Why does God want us to be with Him forever? Why do you always honor God's name? What did God say in the Second Commandment? [1]

How does God want us to speak His holy name? What does it show when we speak God's name with love and respect? What kind of people

[1] It will be well to have the children give the exact words of the Commandment.

always honor God's name? Why do good people always honor God's name? What does God's name make you think about? How does God's name make you think of love and goodness? Why does God's name bring good thoughts to your mind? What name makes you think of heaven? What do you call God when you say the Lord's Prayer? Tell me some of the occasions when you mention God's name. You talk about this beautiful world. You talk about the birds, the trees, the bees, the flowers, the sun, the moon, the stars.

What name makes you think of God's goodness and love? Tell me some of the things God's name brings to your mind. You spoke about the Catholic Church several times. You spoke about the Bible and the Commandments. How does God's name make you think about these things? Why do you always speak God's name with reverence? Whom do you thank for all the good things that you have? Whose name do you want everybody to honor?

Tell me about the devils. What happened to them? Tell me how you think they mention God's name. Who do you think was the first ever to curse and swear? Why do the devils curse and swear? Why do they hate God? Why

do the devils try to teach people to curse and swear? How do you think people learned to curse and swear? Who puts curses and oaths in their minds? Why do you think the devils take God's name in vain? What do they try to make people do with God's name? How do bad people insult God? Why do you feel sorry for people who take God's name in vain? Why is it a sin to take God's name in vain? What can you do for people who curse and swear and take God's name in vain?

Why do you think people curse and swear and take God's name in vain? Perhaps they do not stop to think that they are insulting God. They may not stop to think that it is a sin. Sometimes you may be able to ask them not to do it. Why would you like to ask them not to curse and swear? Why do you want everybody to respect God's name? What is God to you? Who helps you keep from cursing and swearing? How does God's grace help you speak God's name? Why do the devils hate God's name? Why do bad people take God's name in vain? What can you do for those bad people? What did God say in the Second Commandment? Why do you always try to obey God? Why do bad people disobey God? What is it when any one disobeys God?

What name makes you think of our heavenly home? Why does God's name make you think of heaven? How do you think the angels speak God's name? Why do the angels speak God's name with love and reverence? What do they know about God? How do you think the Apostles spoke God's name? How did the saints and martyrs speak God's name? What is the most sacred of all names? What name means Saviour? Tell me about our Lord and His blessed mother. Let us imagine that we are in the stable at Bethlehem, when our Lord was a little baby. Tell me what the Blessed Virgin called Him when she held Him in her arms. How do you think the Blessed Virgin spoke the holy name of Jesus? How do you think she spoke to Him when He was a little boy? Why do you think the Blessed Virgin loved the holy name? Tell me about St. Joseph. Of course we know how he loved our Lord and how he worked for Him. How did St. Joseph speak the holy name of Jesus?

You know the Angel Gabriel told the Blessed Virgin that our Lord's name was to be Jesus. That was before He was born. When our Lord was eight days old, they took Him to the temple to give Him His name. You can read about this in the Gospel of St. Luke, Ch. 2. When did

they give you your name? Where did they take you to baptize you? When did you first receive God's grace?

They say that the little St. John the Baptist used to play with our Lord when He was a little boy. How do you think St. John spoke our Lord's name? Why would you like to be with our Lord like that? When do you have our Lord all to yourself? How do you whisper our Lord's name after Holy Communion? Why do you whisper His holy name with love? Tell me some of the people who have loved our Lord's holy name very much. Tell me about the Apostles. In whose name did the Apostles teach the people? Whose name did they teach the people to love?

The Apostles worked miracles in our Lord's name. Once St. Peter and St. John were going into the temple. At the door there was a poor lame man who couldn't walk. St. Peter was very sorry for him, so he said: "In the name of Jesus, arise and walk." Then the man jumped up and ran about. He was entirely cured. You can read about this in the Acts of the Apostles, Ch. 3. Now how would you tell anybody how St. Peter cured the lame man? What did St. Peter say to the lame man? Where can you read about this miracle? In what part of the Bible are the

Acts of the Apostles? Who wrote the Acts of the Apostles?

What name did the martyrs honor most? Whose name did the pagans try to make them deny? Why were the martyrs willing to die? Tell me some of the martyrs you know. Tell me about a girl martyr. Tell me about a boy martyr. Tell me where the martyrs used to hear Mass.

In whose name are we saved from hell? What do you all do when you hear the holy name of Jesus? Why do you always bow your head? What do good men and boys do when they hear the holy name of Jesus? Why do they lift their hats?

Why do they lift their hats when they pass a Catholic church? Who is present there on the altar? Why do good men and boys lift their hats when they meet a priest? What do boys do when they meet a lady whom they know? Why do they lift their hats? Why are you glad to see boys lift their hats to your mother? What do boys do if they are with their mother or sister when somebody lifts his hat to them?

Who is the holiest woman that ever lived in the world? Whose mother is the Blessed Virgin Mary? What woman's name do you honor most? Why do you honor the name of Mary so

much? How can you honor the Blessed Virgin when you see other women? Whom do you honor when you show respect for other women?

How do you speak of the saints and angels? Who made the saints and angels so good and holy? Why do you speak with reverence of all holy things? Tell me how you speak about the Church; the Mass; the vestments; the Sacraments; the Bible; the altar. Why do you speak of all these things with reverence? For what are they used? Why do you behave so respectfully in church? Whose home is the church? Why are you always polite in the homes of others? Why do you always show respect for others? Why do you always try to behave well at home? Why do you always use good manners before others? Who wants you to show respect for others? Why does God want you to show respect for others? How do you show respect for God?

When do you adore God? Why do you kneel and fold your hands when you pray? Whom do you adore when you kneel before the crucifix? Whom do you honor when you kneel before a statue of the Blessed Virgin? Tell me about some other statues you have seen. Tell me why we have them. Tell me about some holy pictures you know. Tell me about the Stations of the Cross.

Why do you show respect for holy pictures? Why do you show respect for priests and bishops? In whose name do they teach you? Who sent priests and bishops to teach you?

What does the priest do at the altar every day? For whom does the priest pray at Mass? Why do you always speak of priests with respect? How do good men and boys show respect for the priest when they meet him? Where is the priest helping you to go when you die? Tell me some of the things the priest blesses. Tell me about holy water. You know the priest blesses houses, too, when people ask him to do so. What does the priest bless on Candlemas Day? Why do you show respect for blessed candles? What does the priest bless on Ash Wednesday? What does the priest bless on Palm Sunday? What does the priest bless on Holy Saturday? Why do you show respect for blessed ashes and palms? In whose name does the priest bless all these things? You know the priest will bless things to eat, fields, animals, machines, and other things if you ask him. Tell me about the rosary, scapulars, and scapular medals. What does the priest do for them? Why do you show respect for them?

How does God's holy name make you happy?

What does God's holy name make you think about? When do good people call upon God's holy name? What name should people call upon when they are sick and suffering? What name should they call upon when they are in trouble? What name should they call upon when they are dying? How long will you love and honor God's holy name? Whose name will you love in heaven? What name puts holy thoughts in your mind? What name will make you happy all your life? How many will love and praise God's name forever? Why do you say often? — "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost."

Test Questions

1. Why do we love and honor God's name? 2. Why do we pronounce God's name with reverence and love? 3. Who were the first ever to curse and swear? 4. Why do the devils curse and swear? 5. When do bad people insult God? 6. What is the most holy name in heaven and on earth? 7. Why do we honor the name of Mary? 8. Why do we speak with love and respect of the angels and saints?

CHAPTER XV

The Third Commandment

"Remember thou keep holy the Sabbath day."

Six days of the week we devote to our worldly cares. One day of the week we consecrate to God. God said: "Remember thou keep holy the Sabbath day." By divine inspiration the Apostles made Sunday the Lord's day. We are bound, under pain of mortal sin, to hear Mass on Sundays and Holy Days. There are six Holy Days of obligation.

Children, I would like to hear you tell again how God shows His children the way to heaven. Perhaps you would like to tell me about the Commandments. What can you tell me about the days of the week? What does our Heavenly Father provide for our life on earth? How do we get the things that God has provided for our life? Tell me about bread (planting the wheat, making the flour, mixing, baking, etc.); about fruits and vegetables (planting, gathering, and preparing them); about our clothing (wool, cotton, flax); about meat; eggs; milk; butter. Who gave us health and strength to work? Whom do you thank every day for all that you have? How do you show your love for God every day? What does

it show when you pray to God? What does it show when you pray to the Blessed Virgin Mary and the saints and angels?

Tell me, too, about your obedience to your parents. It shows your love for God. Tell me about your love for all the people in the world. Whose children are they all? Tell me some of the things you can do for them. How do these things show your love for God? What can you do for sinners to show your love for God? How does it show your love for God to pray for sinners? Tell me about people who are unkind to you. What about people who may injure you? How does it show your love for God to forgive these?

What day belongs to God? Why do you give Sunday to God? How does it show our love for God to give Sunday to Him? Why is Sunday holy? What did God say in the Third Commandment? Where can you read about the Third Commandment? In what part of the Bible is the Book of Exodus? In which Testament is it? What is the first Book of the Old Testament called?

Which day was the Lord's day in the Old Law? What day of the week was the Sabbath? What is the seventh day of the week called now? Which is the Lord's day in the New Law? Which day

of the week is Sunday? Who came from heaven to give us the New Law of God? When did our Lord come to give us the New Law? Tell me about our Lord's life on earth — His birth, His blessed mother, His teaching, His death, His resurrection.

What twelve men did our Lord choose to teach the New Law of God? Who changed the Lord's day from the Sabbath to Sunday? Who do you think told the Apostles to make Sunday the Lord's day? How long will the Catholic Church teach this? Who said Mass for the people just after our Lord died? On what day of the week did the Apostles say Mass for all the people? Yes; on Sundays the people would come together to hear Mass. At first there were no churches. So the Apostles had to say Mass and have devotions in private houses. You can read about this in the Acts of the Apostles. In what part of the Bible are the Acts of the Apostles? What are other parts of the New Testament? Tell me now how we know that God wants us to give Sunday to Him. How do we keep the Lord's day holy? With whom do we really spend Sunday? Why do you like to be with God? How long will you be with God in heaven?

What does God want you to do on Sunday morning? Why is it a mortal sin to miss Mass on

Sunday? Whom do people disobey when they miss Mass on Sunday? Which Church teaches us what God wants us to do on Sunday? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Who guides the Catholic Church?

Tell me now why God gave us the Commandments. Why did God give us the Third Commandment? Why does God want us to spend Sunday with Him? How does the Third Commandment help us to love God more? What does it show when you go to Mass? What do good people like to do on Sunday afternoon or evening? What does it show when you go to Vespers and devotions? Whose house are you visiting when you go to church? On what day do you have most time to pray? On what day have you most time to think about God and about heaven? On what day have you more time to read good books? Why do you have more time for God on Sundays than on other days? Who told us to lay aside our work on Sunday? Why did God tell us to lay our work aside on His day? How does God want us to spend His day?

Why is it a sin to work on Sunday? Whom do people disobey when they work on Sunday? What do good people do if they have to work on Sunday? Why do good people close their stores on

Sunday? Tell me some of the things farmers keep from doing on Sunday. Why do good people keep from working in their gardens on Sunday? from cutting lawns? making repairs? On what day do people keep from baking, scrubbing, washing, ironing, house-cleaning, and the like? Why does God want us to give Sunday to Him? What other days do we give entirely to God? Name the six Holy Days. What does God want us to do on the Holy Days? What Church did God send to tell us to keep the Holy Days?

Who keeps the truth in the Catholic Church? How long will the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why does God want us to keep Christmas holy? Whose birthday is Christmas? What does God want you to do to keep Christmas holy? What does God want people to lay aside on Christmas? Whose day is Christmas? Where did they take our Lord when He was eight days old? To whom did they offer the Infant Jesus in the temple? What is that day called? What day of the year is the Feast of the Circumcision? (Circumcision was a ceremony of the Old Law to show faith in God.) Why is New Year's Day a Holy Day? What feast is it called? To whom does the Feast of the Circumcision belong? How

do we make the Feast of the Circumcision holy? What do people have to keep from on that day?

What happened forty days after our Lord rose from the dead? What do we call the day on which our Lord went up to heaven? How do we know that Ascension Day is a Holy Day? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

Who was the only human being born without sin? Whose mother is the Blessed Virgin Mary? Who kept the Blessed Virgin free from sin? What day do we give to God to honor His blessed mother, especially because she was always free from sin? What does God want us to do on the feast of the Immaculate Conception? On what day of the year is the feast of the Immaculate Conception? Whom does God want us to honor on the feast of the Immaculate Conception? How do we know that God wants us to honor His blessed mother on that day? Who told the Catholic Church to teach us that? How did the feast of the Immaculate Conception become a Holy Day?

What happened on the feast of the Assumption? How did the feast of the Assumption become a Holy Day? On what day of the year is the feast of the Assumption? How do we have to keep the feast of the Assumption holy?

On what Holy Day do we honor all the saints of heaven? On what day of the year is the feast of All Saints? Who wants us to keep the feast of All Saints holy? How do we know that God wants this?

What other six days, then, do we keep as we keep Sunday? Tell me now something about the Holy Days — Christmas; New Year's; Ascension; the Immaculate Conception; the Assumption; All Saints. What do good people do when they have to work on Holy Days? Why does God want us to rest from work on Sundays and Holy Days? For what does God want us to have time on these days? How do we know that we have to go to Mass on Sundays and Holy Days?

Why do you always try to be on time at Mass? Whom are you visiting when you go to Mass? In whose house do you go to Mass? How will our Lord come to you at Mass? How often is our Lord willing to come to you in Holy Communion? Yes; many of the early Christians used to go to Mass every day and every time they went to Mass they received Holy Communion. In those days they used to have Mass in the catacombs. There are parts of altars now in the catacombs of Rome that are seventeen hundred years old.

Why does God want us to worship Him? How

do we show our love for God in our churches? Why do we give Sundays and Holy Days to God? Whom do we honor with our ceremonies? Yes; ceremonies show our respect and love for God. We kneel at prayer, we genuflect, we bless ourselves, we have many ceremonies at the altar to show our love and reverence for God. It is just as we show our respect for people. We kiss our father and mother to show that we love them. We lift the hat to ladies, we bow to people, we shake hands, and the like.

Of course you know that there are special seasons of prayer and good works in the year. When does Advent come? Why do we pray and fast especially in Advent? For what great feast does Advent prepare our soul?

Before what other great feast does Lent come? How many weeks before Easter does Lent last? When is the special time of prayer and penance in the year? How many days did our Lord fast in the desert? How many days are there in Lent? Why do you give up something you like in Lent? What does it show when you deny yourself something for God? Why do you keep from eating meat on Fridays? What part of us will live forever?

Why is the soul better than the body? What

can you do with the powers of the soul? What powers in you rule the appetites of your body? Why, then, do you think it is good to fast and abstain? What shows that your soul rules your body? What devotions do you like to attend during Lent? What do the Stations of the Cross make you think about? Why did our Lord suffer and die for us?

Who gives us the fruits of the earth and all blessings in this life? What are the four seasons of the year? Tell me some of God's blessings in each of the seasons. On what three days do we fast and pray four times a year? When do the Ember days come? Yes; the Ember days come at the beginning of the four seasons. They are days of fasting and abstinence. Why do we fast and abstain and say special prayers on the Ember days? Why do you think the priest blesses so many things? In whose name do you bless yourself? In whose name does the priest bless things?

Do you know, there is a special blessing for houses on the feast of Epiphany, January sixth? It is called the blessing of the three kings. On this day the priest blesses crayon; then he goes to the houses and blesses them with prayers, sprinkling them with holy water. He writes above the door with the blessed crayon the letters

G. M. B. They are the initials of the three kings' names: Gaspar, Melchior, and Balthasar. The feast of Epiphany is not a Holy Day in all parts of the world. But good people like to go to Mass on that day. There are many other beautiful feasts that are not Holy Days. On what day is the feast of the Purification, or Candlemas Day? What does the priest bless on the feast of the Purification? Why do good people always have blessed candles in their homes? When do they use them? We light blessed candles when people are dying to show their faith in God. The light of the blessed candle makes us think of faith in God.

When does Ash Wednesday come? What does the priest bless on Ash Wednesday? When the priest puts the blessed ashes on our forehead, he says: "Remember, man, that dust thou art and unto dust thou shalt return." What part of us will turn to dust? When will our body begin to turn to dust? Of what do the blessed ashes make you think?

What does the priest bless on Palm Sunday? You remember how our Lord came riding into Jerusalem one day so many years ago. The people loved Him, for He had healed their sick, raised their dead to life, and had done so much for them.

They came out to meet Him, carrying palm branches in their hands and calling Him their king. Why do you think the priest blesses palms on Palm Sunday? Now tell me about Holy Thursday; Good Friday; Holy Saturday; Pentecost (or Whitsunday); Trinity Sunday; the feast of our guardian angels; All Souls' Day.

Why do we perform so many holy actions for God? How do we show our love for God in the material things around us? Now, if somebody asked you to tell about Sundays and Holy Days, what would you say? Tell me what God said in the Third Commandment and how the Sabbath was changed to Sunday. Tell me all that you can do to keep Sunday holy. Tell me why God gave us the Third Commandment. What is God to us? What are we to God? What does our Heavenly Father want to do for us?

TEST QUESTIONS

1. What did God say in the Third Commandment? 2. What was the Lord's day in the Old Law? 3. What is the Lord's day in the New Law? 4. Who made Sunday the Lord's day? 5. What kind of sin is it to neglect Mass on Sundays and Holy Days? 6. From what are we bound to keep on Sundays and Holy Days? 7. What are the six Holy Days? 8. How do we keep the Holy Days?

CHAPTER XVI

The Fourth Commandment

"Honor thy father and thy mother."

The home is built upon the Sacrament of Matrimony. The father is the head of the family; the mother is his helpmate. God gives children to husband and wife. They are to care for them, train them in virtue, and prepare them for their true home in heaven. The home should be a place of peace and love. Obedient children bring happiness into the home. When children obey their parents, they are really obeying God. We show love for God when we honor our parents. Children should be kind, loving, and polite in the home. They should love their parents all through life and pray for them when they die.

Children, you have often told me about God's love. Tell me how God helps you get to heaven. Tell me how God takes care of little babies. Of course you were all little babies once. Where did you get your father and mother? Perhaps you would like to tell me some of the things your parents do for you. Why did God give you your parents? What Sacrament did your father and mother receive when they were married? When did God give them grace to love each other until death? What Sacrament, then, made a home for

you on earth? What Sacrament gave your father and mother grace to love you so much? For what Sacrament will you thank God when you think of how good your father and mother are to you?

Who is the head of your family? Who made your father the head of your family? Who made your mother your father's helpmate? What does God want your father and mother to do for you? What does God want your father and mother to teach you? Who tells little children what they should do and what they should not do? Who tells you at home what is right and what is wrong?

For what are we preparing ourselves in this life? For what did God make us? Whom did God give to you to teach you how to get to heaven? What does God want children to do for their parents? Why does God want you to obey your parents? Who placed your parents over you? Whom do you really obey when you obey your parents? Who taught your parents what to teach you? Which Church teaches your parents what God wants you to do? Who gave us the Catholic Church? Who keeps the truth in the Catholic Church? How long will the Catholic Church last?

What did God say in the Fourth Commandment? How do you honor your parents? What does it show when you obey your parents? Why

do you like to make your parents happy? Who wants you to love your parents? What can you do to make your parents happy? Why does it make your parents happy when you obey them? Why do you always try to be cheerful at home? Whom do you make happy when you are cheerful? Who wants you to be kind and cheerful at home? How does it make you feel to be cheerful all the time? Tell me about your brothers and sisters. How do you like to act with your brothers and sisters? Why do you like to be kind to them? Who wants you to love them? How can you show that you love them? Why do you always try to speak kindly to them? How do you act when you are playing with them? Why do you think it is good to try to speak in a pleasant voice? Why do you try to please others?

In what part of the Bible can you read about the Fourth Commandment? In what part of the Bible is the Book of Exodus? Who wrote the Bible? How did God write the Bible? What are the two parts of he Bible? Why do good people like to have the Bible in their home? Whose word is the Bible? Why do good people like to read the Bible? What Church tells us what the Bible means?

Who wants you to show great respect for your

parents? How do you speak to your parents to show respect for them? Why do you like to obey them cheerfully? How quickly do you like to do what they tell you? Why do you obey your parents even when they are absent? How do other good men and boys show respect for your mother when they meet her on the street? How do you show respect for ladies when you meet them? Of all the women that ever lived, whom do you honor most? Why do you say "sir" when you are speaking to a man? Why do you like to show respect for everybody? Why do you always try to show good manners?

Why do you, boys, take off your hat when you enter a house? Why do you remain standing until grown people are seated? Why do you keep from loud laughing when you are in the home? Why do you keep from making noise while you are eating? What does it show when you use good manners? Why do you always respect others? What would you do if you saw a lady standing and you were sitting? What do you say when anybody does something for you? hat do you say when anybody answers a question for you?

How does God want you to act toward others? Whom does God want you to love? What two

people does God want you to love best on earth? What kind of children always love their parents? Who is our Lord's mother? Whom did our Lord love best on earth when He was a child? What do you think our Lord used to do when He was a boy? What do you think He used to do when she needed wood for the fire? Who do you think carried water for the Blessed Virgin? What do you think our Lord did for St. Joseph? Who used to help St. Joseph with his work? What do you think the boy Jesus would do when His blessed mother or St. Joseph told Him to do something? How do you think our Lord and His blessed mother and St. Joseph lived together? How do you think they acted toward one another? How do you think they spoke to one another? What kind of home do you think they had? What made their home so happy? Was the Holy Family rich or poor? In what kind of place was our Lord born? What made the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph happy in the stable? What kind of people are always happy? Where did our Lord live when He was a little boy? Yes; the Holy Family lived in Nazareth. It is a small town in Palestine about 15 miles from Jerusalem. Palestine is called the Holy Land because our Lord was born there, lived, and died

there. There are about 4000 people living in Nazareth now.

How often do you think the boy Christ was cheerful at home? When do you think the boy Christ obeyed His blessed mother and St. Joseph? How do you think He acted with other children? How would you have spoken to the boy Jesus if you had been there? What would you have done if you had met the Blessed Virgin? Why do you show respect for all women? Why are you glad when others show respect for your mother? How does our Lord feel when you show love for His holy mother? How do you show your love for our Lord's blessed mother?

What home was the happiest home on earth? Who was the head of the Holy Family? What did St. Joseph do for our Lord and the Blessed Virgin? What made the Holy Family happy? Like what home would you wish your home to be? How can you help make your home like the home of the Holy Family? What can you do that the boy Jesus did? How do you think the Blessed Virgin kept the house? How do you think she always did the housework? Who do you think helped her to wash the dishes and sweep the floor? What do you think the boy Jesus would say to His blessed mother when He met her after rising in

the morning? What would He say to St. Joseph, too? What does it show when we wish people "good morning"? What do you think the boy Jesus would say to His blessed mother and St. Joseph when He was going to bed? What do you think He would say when they gave Him something or did something for Him? Why do you think the holy house of Nazareth was the home of love?

I will tell you about the holy house in which the Holy Family lived. After our Lord died it stood in Nazareth for several hundred years. Then it disappeared. It had been carried hundreds of miles across the seas into a country called Dalmatia. You can find this country on the map just across the Adriatic Sea from Italy. But after some years the holy house was taken one night from Dalmatia and carried into Italy. There it was put on a farm which belonged to a woman named Loretto. There it stands to-day in the center of a beautiful church which was built around it. Now it is called the Holy House of Loretto. It is about sixteen feet wide and about forty feet long. They say that the angels carried the Holy House away from Nazareth. In any case, we know that God wanted to save the little home in which the Holy Family lived

so many years. Now, could you tell any one what happened to the Holy House of Nazareth? Where was it first taken to? Where is it now? What can you tell me about how it is placed and about the size of it?

How can you help to make your home a home of love? What kind of home do you think pleases God? What can you do to help make your home happy? What can you do for your father and mother? When did God tell you to obey your parents?

You know our Lord loved the children very much. They used to go to Him. He would put His arms around them and bless them. You can read about this in the Gospel of St. Mark, Ch. 10, 14. What do you think our Lord told these children to do for their parents? Why do you think our Lord wanted them to love and obey their parents? What kind of children love and obey their parents?

Why does our Lord want all children to be good? What do you think the Apostles told the children to do? How do you think the children of the early Christians acted toward their parents? What do you think St. Tarsicius did for his parents? Tell me what you remember about this boy saint.

Now I will tell you about a little girl saint who was also a martyr. Her name was Agnes; she lived in Rome about seventeen hundred years ago. She was a sweet and holy child; but the cruel pagans put her to death because she would not give up our holy Faith. How do you think St. Agnes acted toward her parents? How do you think she spoke to them? When did St. Agnes live? Where did she live? Why did the pagans put her to death?

Whom do you really obey when you obey your parents? Who gave us the Fourth Commandment? Who wrote the Fourth Commandment in the Bible? Who is the head of your family? Who is your father's helpmate? How did God join your father and mother together? What Sacrament gives you a home? What makes the home happy? What was the happiest home on earth? Why would you like to have visited the Holy Family? With whom would you have talked if you had visited them? Where is God's house on earth? How often can you visit God in His house? When do you talk with our Lord now?

When do you talk with our Lord's blessed mother? When do you talk with St. Joseph? What can you do to make God's house beautiful?

Why would you like to help make God's house beautiful? What can you do to help make your own home pleasant? How do you like to help keep the house? Why do you like to help keep the house neat and tidy? What can you do to help your brothers and sisters? How many of you have little brothers and sisters? Tell me about them. What can you teach your little brothers and sisters? How can you teach them to love God? When can you teach them to call God our Father?

What can you show them that our Heavenly Father does for them? What can you tell them about their bread and milk? What can you tell them when you take them to see the pretty flowers? What can you tell them when the birds are singing? What can you tell them when you are looking at the beautiful sunset? What can you tell them when you are looking at the moon and the stars? How do you show them that God loves us all? What can you tell them about your father and mother? How can you help your little brothers and sisters be good? If you are good and kind, how will that help them? How will it help them when they see you obeying your father and mother? How will it help them when they see that you are always cheerful?

How can you help other children with whom you play? What will they think if they see how happy you are when you are good? How do you show that you love your parents? What can you ask God to do for your parents? How often will God bless your parents if you ask Him? What can children do for parents that are dead? What does it show when children pray for their dead parents? How long will you love your parents in heaven? Why does God love your parents so much? For whom are your parents taking care of you?

When can you ask God to bless your home? How often will God bless your home? Who will come to bless your house if you ask him? Who gave the priest power to bless houses and other things? How does the priest bless houses on Epiphany? What does he write above the door? What kind of crayon does he use? On what day is the feast of Epiphany?

Who gave you your parents? Tell me now what God wants you to do for your parents. Tell me about your home. Tell me what makes the home happy.

Test Questions

1. What did God say in the Fourth Commandment? 2. Whom did God give us to make a home for us? 3. When did our father and mother become husband and wife? 4. Whom do we obey when we obey our parents? 5. Who told us to love our parents? 6. Whom do we love best on earth? 7. Why do we honor our parents? 8. Whom do children disobey when they disobey their parents?

CHAPTER XVII

The Fifth Commandment

"Thou shalt not kill."

God gave us our life; we must use it according to His will. We live here on earth to serve God; we are preparing for heaven. Hence we must take proper care of our own life and health. We respect all human life; for God is the Lord of life. God still retains dominion over our body and over our soul; we must answer to Him for the use we make of them on earth. God has told us in the Fifth Commandment to respect human life. Murder and suicide are terrible sins. Gluttony and drunkenness are also sins against the Fifth Commandment.

Children, tell me again about yourselves. Tell me where you came from. Who gave you to your parents? Tell me what your parents did for you when you were a baby. What did they do when you were sick? How did they feel when they were afraid that you were going to die? What did they do when you were in danger? Why did they watch over you so carefully? What did they teach you to do? What kind of children do your parents want to make of you? Who first taught you to make the Sign of the Cross? Who first taught you to say your prayers?

What do you call God when you pray to Him? Why do you call God our Father? How could you show anybody that God is really our Heavenly Father? Tell me some of the things God has done to show that He loves you. Tell me some of the things He has given you. Perhaps you will tell me about God's family, about God's children. Where did you get your life? Who keeps you alive every minute of your life? Of course you can tell me many things God has given you for your life. Why do you eat and drink? How does God want us to keep our body alive? Tell me about food; drink; air; clothing; heat and cold. To whom does our life belong? For whom are we living in this world? Why does God want us to live here in this world? Whom do we serve in this world? For what are we preparing in this life? Who tells us how to live in this world? What Church did God send to teach us how to live? Who wants us to take care of our life? Who tells us to respect all human life?

What did God say in the Fifth Commandment? In what part of the Bible can you read about the Fifth Commandment? Who belong to God's family? How does God want His children to live together? Why did God give us the Fifth Commandment? When did God tell us to

respect the life of all His children? Why did God make all the people in the world? To whom do all the people belong? Why is it a sin to injure anybody? Whose children do they kill when people commit murder? Whose children do people injure when they fight? Why does God want to keep His children from harm? Why are we all like brothers and sisters in this world? Tell me what God wants us to do for one another. Tell me how you can show love and kindness to others. Tell me about the sick; the lame; the blind; the old.

Who rules over our life? Who is the only one that knows when we are going to die? Why do you take good care of your life and health? When did God tell you that? Why do you try to protect others' life and health? What are they to God? What are they to you?

What is the worst sin against the Fifth Commandment?

Tell me now about the first murder in the world. Against whom did Cain sin? To whom did Abel's life belong? In what part of the Bible can you read about Cain and Abel? Genesis.

Tell me about Joseph and his brethren. You know that story, I am sure. What did Joseph's brothers want to do with him at first? What

kind of sin did they commit when they wished to kill him? What kind of sin is it to think about killing anybody?

Tell me about the Holy Innocents. Of course you know that the wicked King Herod put them to death. He thought our Lord was among the number. But the night before St. Joseph had taken Him and the Blessed Virgin to Egypt. You can read about this in the Gospel of St. Matthew, Ch. 2. Why, then, did Herod kill the baby boys? What sin did Herod commit? How did our Lord escape? Where can you read about this? The feast of the Holy Innocents is on December the 28th. On that day the priest says Mass in honor of those little martyrs. He wears purple vestments to show that they were child martyrs. I am sure you could tell about the Holy Innocents, and about their feast. Show me how you would tell your little brothers and sisters about them. When is the feast of the Holy Innocents? What color vestments does the priest wear on that day? Where are the Holy Innocents now? What can the Holy Innocents do for you? In what part of the Bible can you read about the Holy Innocents? In what part of the Bible is the Gospel of St. Matthew?

Did you ever hear of St. John the Baptist's

death? Another wicked king named Herod cut off his head. You can read about this in the Gospels of St. Matthew, Ch. 14; St. Mark, Ch. 6, and St. Luke, Ch. 9. *Read the account for them.*

Perhaps you can tell me some others who were put to death for God. Of course you know about the martyrs. Tell me some martyrs whom you know. Tell me about the Apostles, St. Cecilia, St. Agnes, St. Tarsicius, St. Polycarp. The priest wears red vestments on the feasts of the Apostles and martyrs because red means that they died for our holy Faith. On their feast days the priest says Mass in their honor. Red is a sign of love, too. The priest wears red vestments also on the feast of the Holy Ghost.

What sin did those people commit who put the Apostles and martyrs to death? What kind of vestments does the priest wear on the feast of the Apostles and martyrs? Of what is red the sign? On what other feast does the priest wear red vestments? When is the feast of the Holy Ghost? How many days after Easter is Pentecost? What is the novena to the Holy Ghost? Why did God give the martyrs life? To whom did the martyrs' life belong? What sin did the pagans commit when they killed the martyrs?

What does God want you to do for your life? What does God want you to do for others' life? What does God want you to do for your body? How do people sometimes injure their health with food? Who wants you to take care of your health? How do people sometimes injure themselves by drinking? What sin do some people commit by drinking? Against which Commandment do they sin when they get drunk? Whom do they disobey when they break the Fifth Commandment? Tell me how you take care of your health. Tell me what you do when there is danger; crossing the street; crossing the railroad; coasting; bathing. What do you tell your little brothers and sisters when they are crossing the street? Why do you always try to keep yourself neat and clean? What do you do to make your home healthful? How do you keep your teeth? How can you take care of your eyes? Why do you try to keep your finger nails clean? Why do you eat slowly and properly? Why do you use good manners always? For whom do you show respect when you show good manners? What habit of eating injures people's health? What kind of drinking injures people's health? Tell me about the sin of eating and drinking too much.

What Commandment do people break when they get very angry? What Commandment do people break when they fight and quarrel? How do people disobey God when they fight and quarrel? What Commandment tells them to keep from fighting and quarreling? What Commandment do they break when they hurt anybody? What Commandment would anybody break if he drove an automobile too fast and hurt somebody? What Commandment would he break if he struck somebody and injured him? When you grow up, you may have others working for you; tell me how you will treat them. Of course you will try to take care of their life and health. If you had a factory, how would you make it healthful? Why would you give the workers plenty of light and air? How would you protect them against fires? Why would you have fire escapes? How much would you pay them for their work? What do they need the money for? What should you think about when you are paying wages to others?

What can you do for little children so that they will be healthy? Who gave you to your parents? For whom are your parents taking care of you? Why are good parents happy when God gives them little babies? Who gives life to

little babies? Who wants little babies to be born into the world? Why does God want all the little babies to be born? Why do people get married? When does God send them babies? What Commandment would people break who did not take care of the babies God gives them?

What Commandment does anybody break when he gives bad example to others? What part of them does he injure when he gives bad example? Yes, he injures their soul when he gives bad example. To do evil before others so that they might do the same is called scandal. To give scandal is a sin against the Fifth Commandment. Now what could you tell anybody about scandal? How does anybody disobey God by giving scandal? Why do you always try to give good example to others? Why do you wish that everybody would be good? What kind of people love God? Why do you wish that everybody would love God?

Tell me now how people break the Fifth Commandment. Tell me how you can show your love even for murderers. Tell me for whom our Lord prayed when He was hanging on the cross. Tell me about St. Andrew. How do people injure others' souls? What Commandment do people

break who give bad example? What Commandment do people break who commit suicide? What kind of sin is suicide? In what kind of sin do people die who commit suicide? If they are insane, do you think they are free from sin? What happened to Judas after he betrayed our Lord? You can read about Judas in the Gospels. Judas committed a great sin and then he lost hope. What do you think our Lord would have done if Judas had asked Him to forgive him? What should Judas have done? What is the most terrible death anybody can die? Why should people always have hope no matter how much they suffer? Where shall we all be happy? What kind of people are happy in this world? What can make sinners happy? What will God do for sinners? What can you do for sinners?

What does God want us to do for one another? Tell me some of the things you can do to show your love for others. What can you do for those who are hungry? If a poor sick man needed a drink, what would you do? What would you like to do if you saw a poor man without enough clothes to keep him warm? What would you like to do if you saw a little boy carried away by bad people? What would you like to do if you found a poor old man out in the cold with no

home? What can you do to cheer up sick people? Why do you go to the funeral of your friends?

Tell me what you can do to help others to be good and to love God. What would you like to do if you found somebody that didn't know about God? What would you like to do for those who do not know our holy Faith? If you saw somebody that was not sure whether he would do evil or not, what would you like to tell him? What would you like to do for those that are sad? How could you comfort them in their sorrow? What could you tell them about God? What would you like to tell those who commit sin? Why would you like to tell them to be sorry for their sin? What would you do if somebody did harm to you? Why would you forgive him? How would you act toward those who are always unkind to you? Why would you bear their wrongs patiently? Of course, you remember how they crowned our Lord with thorns and how they beat Him with rods. Then they put the heavy cross upon His shoulders and made Him carry it through the streets of Jerusalem.

How did our Lord bear all these injuries? What did He want to teach us by bearing it all patiently? Why do you like to forgive those who injure you? Whose example do you follow when you

pray for those who injure you? Why do you pray for all the people in the world? Why do you pray for people that are dead?

Tell me now all that God meant for us to do when He gave us the Fifth Commandment. How does the Fifth Commandment show that God loves us? Why does God tell us how to take care of our life and health? Why does God want us to live on earth? What are we to God? What is God to us? Tell me again how you take care of your health. Tell me what you can do in your home; on the street. How can you help others take care of their life and health? How does bad example injure others? What could you tell anybody about anger; fighting; quarreling; gluttony; drunkenness? Whom do people disobey when they break the Fifth Commandment?

You might tell me some of the things you can do for others' bodies; for people that are hungry; homeless; poorly clad; sick; respect for dead. Then tell some of the things you can do for their soul; tell them about God and our holy Faith; how to avoid sin; forgive them.

Why does it make you happy to keep the Commandments? Tell me the First; Second; Third; Fourth; Fifth Commandment. How do the

Commandments show that God loves us? How do we show by the Commandments that we love God? Why do you always try to keep the Commandments? Whom do you obey when you keep the Commandments? Whom do people disobey when they break the Commandments? Whom do people love who keep the Commandments? Why did the saints keep the Commandments so well?

Test Questions

1. What does God tell us to respect in the Fifth Commandment? 2. Who gave us life? 3. How must we use our mind and body? 4. Why must we take proper care of our health? 5. How do many people injure their health? 6. Why should we respect the life and health of others? 7. What kind of sins are murder and suicide? 8. Against which Commandment is scandal a sin?

CHAPTER XVIII

The Sixth and Ninth Commandments

"Thou shalt not commit adultery."
"Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife."

God decides how we are to use all things created. It is thus with our soul and body. God wants us to use them for His service here on earth. Both our body and our soul are destined for eternal life with God. So we must keep them pure and holy on earth. It is this that God tells us in the Sixth and Ninth Commandments. We must control our bodily appetites and we must avoid illicit desires.

Tell me, children, about the things around us. Tell me how we get food, and clothing, and all that we need in this world. Who tells us how to use all these things? What does God intend that we should use these things for? Tell me the good that comes to us from fire, water, and things to eat. Tell me some of the evils that come to people when they do not use fire properly. Then tell me what happens sometimes when people are not careful about water. What happens if people eat or drink too much? What happens if people take poison?

Perhaps you would like to talk about your soul and body. Tell me where they come from. Who gave you your mind? What can you do with your mind? How does it happen that you can read, write, and talk? How does it happen that you can choose and wish for things? How does it happen that you can remember things? Who tells you how to use your mind? How do we know all that God wants us to do? What Church teaches us? Why did God give you your parents? What does your guardian angel put in your mind? When is the feast of our Guardian Angels? Oct. 2d. In whose honor does the priest say Mass on that day? What is the color of the vestments which he uses on that day? Yes; he uses white vestments. On some feasts a little curtain is hung over the tabernacle door. It is always the same color as the vestments of the day. White signifies purity. White vestments are used on all feasts of our Lord, the Blessed Virgin, the saints, and angels.

How do you think the angels use their minds? What kind of thoughts do you think they have? Why does the priest wear white vestments on the feast of our Guardian Angels? By what power of your soul can you know God's holy truth? What does your mind tell you about God when

you look at this beautiful world? What does God want you to think when you look at the sun, the moon, and the stars? What does God want you to think about when you see the flowers; the plants; the beautiful sky? How, then, does God want you to use your mind? What kind of thoughts does God want you to have? In what part of you is your mind? To whom does your soul belong? What does God want you to keep from your mind? Why does God want you to keep all evil thoughts away? Why does God want you to keep your mind pure? What is the first thing for which God made your mind? How can you use your mind to help you to get to heaven? Who puts bad thoughts into people's mind? Why does the devil put bad thoughts into their mind? Why does the devil hate to see your mind pure?

What kind of things does God want you to wish for? Tell me some of the good things God wants you to desire. *If necessary, suggest some things, such as, to be good, to love everybody, to serve God, etc.*

Where will your soul be forever? Why do you always try to keep your soul pure? With whom will your soul be in heaven? Who are those that are pure now in heaven? But when will

your body be with God in heaven? What will happen to your body on the last day? Why will God bring your body back to life at the end of the world? What two Commandments did God give to tell us to keep our soul and body pure? What did God tell us in the Sixth Commandment? When did God tell you to keep your body pure? What did God tell us in the Ninth Commandment? When did God tell you to keep your soul pure? What do you do to keep your soul pure? What kind of thoughts do you keep from your mind so that your soul will be pure? What kind of desires do you keep from your soul so that it will be pure? What kind of thoughts do pure people always try to have? What do pure people do when bad thoughts come to their mind? What Commandment do people break when they take pleasure in bad thoughts? Whom do they disobey when they keep bad thoughts in their mind?

What kind of sin is it to take pleasure in bad thoughts? What kind of sin sent the devils to hell? Where do people go who die in mortal sin? When will God forgive people their sins? What do they have to do if they want God to forgive them? What kind of sin is it to take pleasure in bad desires? What do pure people do when

bad desires come to them? In what Commandment did God tell us to keep our body pure? Why does God want us to keep our body pure always?

Tell me again what you can do with your body; your eyes; your ears; your voice; your hands; your feet. How can you use your eyes to keep your body pure; ears; voice; hands? How does God want you to use your eyes? What does God want you to turn away your eyes from? What kind of pictures and things does He want you to turn away from? What does God want you to think when you look at this beautiful world? What does He want you to think about when you see other people? Why do boys lift their hats to ladies? Why do all women make you think of the Blessed Virgin?

How does God want you to use your ears? What do you think about when you hear sweet music? Who put these beautiful sounds into the world? What do you think about when you hear the birds singing? Who taught the little birds to sing? What kind of words does God want you to listen to? What do you hear when you go to Mass? Whose word do you hear when the priest preaches the Gospel? What does God want you to keep from listening to? What do

you do when anybody tries to say bad things before you? What do you do when anybody starts to tell a vile story? Why do you keep from listening to bad songs and bad jokes? Why does God want you to keep from listening to these things?

Tell me about your strength. Tell me why God gives it to you. How does God want you to use your hands? Why can't people do anything they please with their body? To whom does their body belong? Which is nobler in you, your soul or your body? Which should rule the other? How do good people control the desires of their body? Why do you think the saints used to fast so much? Yes, they wanted their soul to rule their body. They wanted to control the desires and appetites of the body. St. Francis of Assisi lived most of the time on bread and water. You know he lived about seven hundred years ago.

Why do we abstain from meat on Fridays? Why do we fast during Lent? What is the first day of Lent? What does the priest bless on Ash Wednesday? What does the priest say when he puts blessed ashes on your forehead? On Ash Wednesday and on the Sundays of Lent the priest wears purple vestments. Purple is the

sign of sorrow and penance. The purple vestments remind the people that they should be sorry for their sins and do penance.

Why do you think our Lord and the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph were willing to be so poor? What did they love better than fine clothes? Why do you think purity is better than fine clothes? How long will purity last? Why do you think goodness is better than fine food? Who wants you to rule your body with your reason? Why are you able to deny your body something it craves? Why are the animals not able to deny the desires of the body? When you keep from eating meat on Friday, what does that show about your soul and body? When you get out of bed on a cold morning to go to church, which part of you is ruling? Why did God give us reason? What should guide us in all that we do? Who guides our reason? What Church teaches us all that God wants us to do?

Why does God want our soul to rule our body? What part of us is like the angels? What part of us is made to the image of God? What kind of being is God? What kind of beings are the angels? What Commandments tell us to rule our bodies and their desires? What part of us is ruling when we fast? How did the saints keep

the appetites of their body down? The saints all fasted and did penance. They denied their bodies everything they could; for they wanted to keep away from all bad desires. Some of them lived years and years in wild places all alone. There they would live on berries and roots. They lived only to think about God and to pray to Him and love Him. They are called hermits.

What do you think made the saints happy? Why does it make people happy to be good? What kind of people are miserable? What did God give us to guide us in this world? Why does God want us to follow our reason? What are we preparing for in this life? With whom shall we be in heaven? What are the things of this world good for? Where should they help us to go when we die? Why will not money make people really happy? How long can they have it? Why do the pleasures of this world not make people really happy? How soon do they pass away? Why does God want us to keep our soul and body pure? When will we have our body in heaven? When does our Lord come into our body? How long does our Lord remain in us after Holy Communion? What do you do during that time?

What kind of sin is it to take pleasure in bad

thoughts? What Commandment says to avoid bad thoughts? What Commandment does anybody break when he looks at bad pictures? What kind of sin is it to wish for bad things? Why does God want us to be modest in all that we do? What do you do with your eyes to keep your soul pure? What do you turn your eyes away from? Why do you turn away when anybody begins evil talk?

Who was the purest creature that ever lived on earth? Why did God make the Blessed Virgin so pure? Who helped all the saints to be pure? What did they ask God to give them to help them be pure? For what grace will you ask God often? When do you ask God for His grace? When are little babies pure? What do they receive in Baptism? What does God's grace do for their soul?

How can children keep as pure as they were when they were baptized? What do you have to do to keep pure all your life? From what do you have to guard your eyes? From what do you have to guard your ears? What do you have to avoid with your tongue? When does God see us? What does God know about what we do? Why does God watch over us so well? Why does God love us so much? Whose chil-

dren are we? Many of the saints were as pure all their lives as they were when they were baptized. They kept their baptismal innocence. It is thought that St. Agnes and St. Aloysius kept their baptismal innocence until they died.

What Sacrament do you think helps you most to be pure? Why does the Holy Eucharist help you to be pure? When is a good time to ask our Lord to keep you pure? What Sacrament must people receive when they fall into sin? Why do they receive the Sacrament of Penance before going to Holy Communion?

God loves pure souls. Purity is the most beautiful of all the virtues. It makes people like angels. It makes them dear to God. When can you thank God for giving you the virtue of purity? What saint do you think loved purity best? It was St. Joseph. You know God gave him the grace to be very pure because he lived with our Lord and the Blessed Virgin Mary. Tell me in what town the Holy Family lived. How large was Nazareth? What happened to the home in which the Holy Family lived? Where is it now?

What did our Lord teach the people in the Sixth and Ninth Commandments? After our Lord died who taught the people to be pure? Why do

we live here on this earth? What do people do who love God? What must we use to serve God? How can you serve God with your mind? How can you use your body to serve God? What part of you should rule your life? What makes us higher than the animals?

Why are people able to control the appetites of their body? Why did God give us a soul? Where does God want us to go when we die? Why does God want us all in heaven? Why, then, do you try to keep your soul and body pure?

Test Questions

1. What do the Sixth and Ninth Commandments tell us? 2. Who gave us our mind and our body? 3. Who tells us how to use our mind and body? 4. For what must we use our mind? 5. For what must we use our body? 6. What must we keep from our minds? 7. What is the Sixth Commandment? 8. What is the Ninth Commandment?

CHAPTER XIX

The Seventh Commandment

"Thou shalt not steal."

We are all God's children, so He wants us to live together on earth like brothers and sisters. In the Seventh Commandment God says: "Thou shalt not steal." By this God tells us to respect the rights of others. We must be honest and just in all our dealings with our fellow men. We must be careful with all that belongs to them and we must be good citizens of our country.

Children, perhaps you would like to talk again about the Commandments. You might tell me why God gave us the Commandments, and how the Commandments show that God loves us. Whom do you obey when you keep the Commandments? Whom do people disobey when they break the Commandments? Whom do they disobey when they commit a sin? What does it mean to commit a sin?

Now tell me about some of the things that belong to you. *Take a book, a pencil, or something and exemplify ownership with it.* Tell me some of the things you have at home; your playthings;

dolls; sled; wagon; skates; bicycle; kite; dog; rabbits, and the like. *Have the children tell you about these things. Be interested in them and encourage the expression of the children. As far as seems prudent they might also be permitted to tell about the possessions of their parents. But this should be done so as not to accentuate differences and perhaps cause envy.*

Now, where did you get these things? How did God give them to you? Why does God want you to have those things? Whose children are we all? For what does God want us to use all that we have? Why does God want to protect from others the things that belong to us? What Commandment did God give to say that nobody should take what belongs to us? What did God say in the Seventh Commandment? How would you feel if somebody stole your skates, wagon, or anything belonging to you? Why did God give the Seventh Commandment? What did God want to protect for us? When did God tell people not to take your ——? (*Name things that have been mentioned.*)

Tell me now about our Heavenly Father and about some of the things He gives us. Who tells us how to use the things of this world? How does God want the things of this world to help

us? What should they help us to do? Why does God wish us to keep from loving the things of this world? What can people do with their money and their property when they die? Where will everybody be rich? How long will you have the good things of heaven? But why, then, does God give us many things in this world? What does it show when God is so good to you?

On what special day do we pray for good crops and fruits? These are the Ember days. They are Wednesday, Friday, and Saturday at the beginning of the four seasons — spring, summer, autumn, and winter. On these days we beg God especially to give us the blessings of the seasons. Now, what would you say if some one asked you about the Ember days? For what do we pray especially on the Ember days? When do the Ember days come? From whom do we get all that we have in this world? When did God tell people to respect what belongs to us?

Where do all the people get what they have? In what Commandment did God tell us what belongs to others? Why do you always give to others what belongs to them? Whom do you obey when you give to others what belongs to them? Whom do people disobey when they take what belongs to others? Why is it a sin

to take what belongs to others? Whom do people disobey when they commit a sin? Whom do people disobey when they steal? When will God forgive people who steal? What do they have to do to be forgiven? For what do they have to be sorry? What Sacrament must they receive? What must they promise? What must they pay back? What happens if they are not willing to pay back what they have stolen?

What kind of people are always honest? What does it mean to be honest? When did God tell us to be honest? What Commandment did God give us to tell us to be honest? What kind of people can you always trust? Why can you always trust honest people? Why can everybody always trust you? Why could anybody let you take care of a large sum of money for him? Who taught you to be honest always? Why do you always give to others what belongs to them? If somebody left you to take care of something for him, why would you be very careful? If you were left alone in somebody's house, why would you keep from looking around at everything? Why would you keep from looking into drawers and closets and cupboards? Who tells you to be good and honorable like that?

Who gives people the right to have houses and

farms and other things? Who tells us to respect the property of others? What should anybody do if he broke a window in another's house? Why should he pay for it? Why do people have houses? Who wants people to live together as families? Who belong to your family at home? Who gave you your father and mother? Who gave you your brothers and sisters? What Commandment tells people to pay their rent? Why would it be a sin if anybody did not pay his rent? To whom does the rent belong?

Who wants us always to pay our debts? What Commandment do people break when they do not pay their debts? Of what should people think when they are making debts? Why should they think of how they are going to pay them? Why is it better to be saving than to make debts? Why do you try to take good care of your shoes and clothes? How does that help your father and mother? Why do you always try to keep your clothes neat and clean? How do you take care of your clothes? Why are you careful with things at home? Why do you always try to keep from breaking things? Who has to pay for those things? Why do you help to keep your home neat and clean?

Of what are girls careful when they are setting

the table or washing the dishes? Why are they careful not to break the dishes? How can you help your parents to be saving? Why do you keep from wasting food? What can you do with food that you do not need? Who wants you to help the poor? Why does God want you to help poor people?

Tell me about our Lord's little home in Nazareth. Tell me how you think our Lord and the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph lived. What do you think that our Lord, when He was a little boy, did for His mother? Of what do you think He was careful then? What do you think St. Joseph and the Blessed Virgin had to do to keep out of debt? How do you think they kept their clothes? How do you think the Blessed Virgin kept their little house? How do you think she kept our Lord's clothes? Where is God's house on earth? What kind of people help to build churches and keep them beautiful? Why does the Catholic Church have so many church buildings? Why does the Catholic Church have so many school buildings? Who gives the Catholic Church the right to have these buildings? Who is the head of the Catholic Church in heaven? Who is the head of the Catholic Church on earth? Where does the Pope live?

What is the most beautiful church in the world? Whose house is beside St. Peter's Church in Rome?

The Pope's house is called the Vatican Palace. That is because it stands on a place that used to be called the Vatican Hill, a part of Rome. The Vatican Palace is very large. Hundreds of men live there and have offices to take care of affairs for the whole Catholic Church. Now, what is the Pope's house called? Beside what church does it stand? Why is it called the Vatican?

There are more than five hundred beautiful churches in Rome. About 1900 years ago, when St. Peter was Pope, there were no churches, so some of the rich Catholics gave their homes to be remodeled and made into churches. These were the first churches of Rome. Who wants us to protect the property of the Church? Where did the first churches of Rome come from? About how many churches are there in Rome?

What did God tell us in the Seventh Commandment? When do people break the Seventh Commandment? What Commandment do robbers break? What do robbers have to do if they want God to forgive them? What do they have to pay back? Whom do they disobey when they steal?

What do you do when you find anything? Why do you seek the owner? To whom does it belong? Why do you always wish to give to others what belongs to them? Why would you try to save others' things for them? Who wants you to be kind to others? What should anybody pay if he does damage to another's property? What Commandment does anybody break if he destroys other people's things? Why is it wrong to damage others' lawns or flowers? What Commandment do people break when they trample down others' crops in the field?

What would you do if a storekeeper gave you too much change? Why would you give it back to him? What would you do if you made a mistake and charged too much for something you were selling? Why would you give back the extra charge? Why is it wrong to charge too much for goods? What Commandment do people break when they charge too much for goods? What Commandment do people break who cheat? What do they have to pay back when they cheat? What Commandment do people break if they give false weights or measures? What do they have to do if they give false weights or measures?

How much should people pay those who work for them? Who wants them to pay what is right?

What kind of work should people do when they work for others? Who wants them to do honest work? What Commandment do people break when they fail to do honest work? Why do good people never have to be watched at work? What kind of people will work as well when they are alone as when the superintendent is there?

When are we just to others? Who tells us to respect all their rights? What do honest people always give to others? Who tells them to give to others what belongs to them? When did God tell them that? Why are good Catholics always good citizens? What kind of people respect the rights of others? Who wants us to obey the law of the land?

Why did God give us the Seventh Commandment? Why does God want others to respect our rights and property? Why does He tell us to give to others what belongs to them? How does God want us to live together on earth?

Where do the Commandments guide us to go? How does the Seventh Commandment help us get to heaven? How do the things of this world help us gain heaven? Why does God want us with Him in heaven?

Test Questions

1. What does God say in the Seventh Commandment? 2. Whom do those who steal disobey? 3. What does the Seventh Commandment teach us? 4. What must we do for the property of others? 5. What must those who steal do to be forgiven? 6. What must those do who damage the property of others? 7. What must those do who find lost articles? 8. What must those do who are hired by others?

CHAPTER XX

The Eighth Commandment

"Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor."

God gave us a mind to know the truth and the power of speech to express our thoughts. When we use our mind and our faculty of speech properly we tell the truth. God is truth; all truth comes from Him. In the Eighth Commandment God teaches us to love the truth and He warns us against falsehood. God wants us to speak well about others, because we are all His children. Backbiting, calumny, detraction, slander, talebearing, and lies come from the devil who is the "father of lies."

Children, I wonder what you would like to talk about to-day. You spoke about the Seventh Commandment the last time. Perhaps you would like to recall some of the things you told me about the other Commandments. What would you like to tell me about the Seventh Commandment? Why does God want us to respect what belongs to others? When did God tell us to keep our soul and body pure? To whom do our soul and body belong? What does God want us to do with our soul and body? How can we serve God with our soul and body?

In what Commandment did God tell us to take care of our life and respect the lives of others? What does God want us to do with our life on earth? Why did God give us the Commandments? Why, then, does God want to show us the way to heaven?

Whose children are we all? Where did we get our life? Tell me some of the things we can do with our life. Tell me about our eyes, our ears, our voice. What can we do with the powers of our soul? What other beings can think? Why can no other beings besides God and the angels and people think? Why cannot the animals think?

How much does God know? Where does all truth come from? Why did God give us our mind? What do you think God wants us to know with our mind? Why does God want us to know the truth? Who loves the truth? Why do we say?—"God is truth." How long has the truth been in God's mind? Why do two and two make four? From whose mind did that little truth come? Why cannot anybody change two and two into five? How long have $2+2=4$, $3+3=6$, $4+4=8$? From whose mind did all truth come? What did God want us to know when He gave us our mind? How can we make

known to others what is in our mind? Why did God give us the power of speech?

When did God tell us always to be truthful? What does God tell us in the Eighth Commandment? How, then, does God want us to use our power of speech? Why does He want us always to tell the truth? What kind of people tell the truth? Whom do we obey when we tell the truth? What Commandment do we keep when we tell the truth? Whom do we love when we love the truth? Why do you love the truth? How long has God loved the truth? How long will you love the truth? How long will the angels love the truth? Why did the saints love the truth so much? To whom does the truth lead us? How does God want us to use our mind? Who helps you, at home, to know the truth? What loving spirit helps you to know the truth? What Church did God send to teach us the truth? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth?

For what did the martyrs die? Tell me about some of the martyrs. What did the pagans try to make them do? Tell me about St. Cecilia, St. Tarsicius. Did you ever hear about St. Sebastian? He was an officer in the Roman

army and a fine young soldier. He lived about seventeen hundred years ago. When the pagans learned that he was a Christian, they tried to make him deny his Faith. But he told them that his Faith was the truth that came from God and that he would sooner die than deny it. Then they tied him to a tree and shot many arrows into his body. Thus he died a holy martyr for our Faith.

Who gave the martyrs courage to die for the true Faith? What did God's grace do for them when the pagans tried to make them deny their Faith? When did St. Sebastian live? What did the pagans try to make him do? What did St. Sebastian say? How did the pagans kill him? What Commandment did the pagans break?

Who hates the truth? Why does the devil hate the truth? Why is the devil called the "father of lies"? Where do lying and falsehood come from? What lie did the devil tell to Adam and Eve? Where can you read about this lie? Who teaches people to tell lies? Why does the devil try to make people tell lies? Whom do people disobey when they tell lies? Why does the devil want people to disobey God? Why does the devil hate God?

Why is it a sin to tell lies? What Command-

ment do people break when they tell lies and falsehoods? Whose example are they following when they tell lies? Whom do people disobey when they commit sin? Whom do you obey when you are good? Why do you love to tell the truth always? Who gives you courage to tell the truth when it is hard to tell? Who makes you strong enough to tell the truth even if you will be punished for it? Who helps you to tell the truth when you know others will laugh at you for it? Who keeps you from being ashamed to tell the truth? Why would you tell the truth even if it would cause you to lose money? Why would you tell the truth even though you would lose your friends by it?

Did you ever hear of Cardinal Newman? He was a very learned man, but he was not born a Catholic. For many years he studied our holy Faith and prayed to God to make His holy truth known to him. At last God helped him to see that our holy Faith is the divine truth and so he made up his mind to become a Catholic. When his friends and relatives learned that, they turned against him. But God gave him the strength to come into the Church. He became a priest and later a cardinal. Many thousands learned from him to love the truth and to know that

God sent the Catholic Church to teach it. Cardinal Newman died in eighteen hundred and ninety.

What do you think Cardinal Newman loved more than his friends and relatives? Who helped him to love the truth so much? Where did he get his courage and strength? For what did he pray many years? What kind of people always tell the truth? Why do good people always tell the truth? Why does God want us to tell the truth always? Why does God love the truth? From whom does the truth come?

Why does God want you to hate falsehood? From whom does all falsehood come? In what Commandment does God tell us to avoid all falsehood? What Commandment do people break when they tell lies? What did God say in the Eighth Commandment? How does God want us to speak about others? Why does He want us to speak well about others? What Commandment do people break when they tell lies about others? Whom do they disobey when they lie about others? What do people who lie about others have to do to be forgiven? What Sacrament must they receive? For what must they be sorry? What must they promise? What must they do for the person whom they have injured?

Whose pardon must they ask? What injury must they repair? How can they make up for the lies they have told? What must they tell those to whom they told the lies about others? How many of them must they tell that what they said was untrue? Who tries to make people lie about others? What did bad men say about our Lord? Why did they accuse our Lord of evil? For whom did our Lord pray when He was hanging on the cross? What did He ask God the Father to do for those wicked men who nailed Him to the cross?

Why do you forgive those who say mean things about you? Why do you pray for them? What do you do when any one injures you? Whom do you imitate when you forgive them? Why do you think some people hate the Catholic Church? What teaching does the Catholic Church give us? Why did those men hate our Lord and nail Him to the cross? What did the pagans of Rome do against the Catholic Church for three hundred years? Why did they put the martyrs to death? How did the people arrange so that they could go to Mass and Holy Communion then? Tell me about the catacombs. What kind of places were the catacombs? For whom do you think the martyrs prayed when they were dying? Whom

did they forgive? Why did they forgive the pagans who were putting them to death?

Why do people sometimes tell lies about the Pope, and bishops, and priests? Who sent the Pope, and bishops, and priests to teach you? What do they do when people tell lies about them? Why do they forgive them? Who wants them to forgive them? Why do they pray for those who injure them? Of course, many people do not know better. They just listen to those who tell them false things about the Catholic Church and about the Pope and the bishops and priests. It was the same when the people cried out to ask Pontius Pilate to crucify our Lord. They believed the falsehoods the Pharisees had told them about our Lord. What Commandment did they break when they told those falsehoods? Why did the people cry out? — "Crucify Him." Why do many people talk evil against the Catholic Church?

What kind of sin is it to take away another's good name by lying? Why is it a sin to tell the secret faults of others? How does it injure others to tell their secret faults? If a man had been in jail and some one told it where it was not known, what harm might that cause the poor man? What Commandment does anybody break

when he injures others by telling their secret faults?

Why are you always careful about other people's good name? Why is it a sin to take away another's good name? Why is it a sin to injure others? How does God want us to act toward others? Why does God want us to be kind to others? Why do you say "please" when you ask others for something? Why do you always show respect for others? What do you say when somebody does something for you or gives you something? What do you say if you happen to bump against anybody or step on his foot? Why do you say? — "I beg your pardon" or "excuse me." Why do you always try to be polite to others in that way? How do those things show that you love them? Why do you always try to be cheerful and agreeable to others? But, why do you like to make others happy? Whose children are they all?

What Commandment do people break when they carry tales about others? How does talebearing often cause trouble? How does God want us all to live together in this world? What would you do if anybody tried to carry tales to you about others? Why would you refuse to listen to them? Whom would you please by not

listening to those tales? Who tries to make people backbite others? Why does the devil love backbiting and talebearing? Why does he like to see people hate one another? Who wants us all to love one another?

What did God say in the Eighth Commandment? Did you ever see anybody take an oath in court? What kind of sin is it to swear falsely? Why is the sin of perjury a mortal sin? Whom do they call to witness when they take an oath? What do they promise God to tell when they take an oath?

What Commandment do people break when they call others bad names and use bad language to them? Whom do they disobey when they do this? Why is it a sin to use bad names and bad language against others? Why is it a sin to think evil about others? How does God want us to think about others? Who wants us to avoid all false suspicions about others? Why do you think it is dishonorable to spy upon others? Why do good people always avoid peeping to see what others are doing?

Why is it wrong to read other people's letters without their permission? What makes it dishonorable to do this? Why do you always keep secrets that are confided in you? Why would

it be wrong to tell others' secrets? Why do doctors and lawyers keep the secrets that people tell them? Why would it be a sin to tell these secrets?

Why does the priest guard so carefully what is told him in confession? What do you think the priest would be willing to suffer to keep secret what he heard in confession?

Why will you love the truth all your life? Why is truthfulness a noble virtue? Whom do we imitate when we love the truth? Why will you always guard the good name of others? Who taught you to love others? What will you always avoid in talking? Why did God give you the power of speech? Why did God give you your mind? Where does all truth come from?

What are the sins against the Eighth Commandment? Tell me how people sin by talking about others. Who is the "father of lies"? Who will give you the grace to be truthful all your life? Why did God give us the Ten Commandments? Why does He want us to be good? Why does He want us in heaven? Why, then, did He give us the Eighth Commandment? Why does He want us to be truthful? Where does the Eighth Commandment help us to go

when we die? How does the Eighth Commandment show that God loves us?

Test Questions

1. What did God say in the Eighth Commandment? 2. What does the Eighth Commandment teach us? 3. Whom are we obeying when we tell the truth? 4. Who love the truth? 5. What Commandment do those break who tell lies? 6. What must those who lie about others do before they are forgiven? 7. Who tempts people to tell lies? 8. What kind of sin is it to tell the secret faults of others?

CHAPTER XXI

The Tenth Commandment

"Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's goods."

This life is a preparation for eternal life. God wants us to use the things of this world to help us get to heaven. Riches and earthly pleasures do not make people really happy. We are happy when we love and serve God in this world, for then we are filled with the hope of everlasting life with God. We are contented with what we have in this world, because we put our trust in God. We keep from envying others because God knows best what is good for us. Then, too, we know that it is easier for poor people to love God in this world. For this reason the saints loved to be poor.

Children, I wonder if you would like to talk about the Commandments again to-day. Tell me about some of the Commandments. *Let each talk about the Commandment he selects. Ask in turn:* How does this Commandment show that God loves us?

Of course you can tell what God had in mind when He gave us the Commandments. No doubt you would be able to tell anybody why you love to keep the Commandments so well. But, tell me what shows that God is a loving Father to

us all. What has God done for us? What does God do for you every day, every minute? What does God want us to do in this world? For what are we preparing ourselves in this life? How can we show that we love God? Tell me, then, some of the things you do to serve God. What do you do every morning and evening to show your love for God? What do you do on Sundays and Holy Days to show your love for God? Tell me some of the things for which you can thank God every day. Tell me about God's children and how you can show your love for God through them. Why do you love all the people in the world? Why are you happy when you see that others are good? Why are you happy to know that they love God? When did God tell you to respect what belongs to others? What did God say in the Seventh Commandment?

Who tells us how to use what we have in this world? For what does God want us to use these things? Who gives people all that they have? To whom do all things belong? For whom, then, are we using the things that we have in this world? How can poor people be happy when they suffer? How many people does God love? If God loves all the people, why does He let some of them suffer so much? Who knows best what is

good for us? When will God reward us for all that we suffer in this world? Why do you think it is easier for poor people than for rich people to love God? What do rich people sometimes love too much? How long can they keep their riches? Why is it easier for poor people to think of heaven?

What did God say in the Tenth Commandment? Who takes care of us all in this world? Why did God tell us to keep from desiring what belongs to others? Why does God want us to be contented with what we have? Of course, some are poor and others are rich; some are sick and others are well; some are old and others are young. Perhaps you can tell me how that helps us to show that we love one another. Why are we all like one big family? Tell me now about your little brothers and sisters. Tell me what you do for them. Why do you help them and take care of them? Why do you love them so much?

What, then, do you think the strong should do for the weak in God's family? How can you show that you love poor people and sick people? Why, then, do you think God allows some people to be poor and to be sick and to suffer? Through whom does God show His love for them? How

do people show God's love for the poor and for the sick? Who gave them all that they have? How do you think the Christians lived together when the Apostles were still alive? Yes; they loved one another very much. They lived together like brothers and sisters. They brought their money and shared it with the needy so that all had plenty to live on.

Why do you think the early Christians loved one another so much? Whom did they thank for all that they had? Whom do you thank for all you have in this world? Who gave you your home and parents? Who gives you all that you need for your life? What does God tell us to keep from in the Tenth Commandment? When does God tell us to avoid envy? Why does God want us to keep from desiring what others have? Why does God want us to be contented with what we have? How does the Tenth Commandment show that God loves us? Why did God give us the Tenth Commandment? How does the Tenth Commandment help us get to heaven? Whom do you obey when you keep the Tenth Commandment?

Whom are you obeying when you are contented with what you have? In whom do you trust when you are contented with what you have?

In what Commandment did God tell poor people to keep from envying rich people? What do you keep from if others have more than you have? Why do you keep from envying them? Whom do you obey when you keep from envying them? What will you keep from if others are well when you are sick?

Tell me now how the Holy Family lived at Nazareth. Tell me about our Lord's birth. Why were they contented to be so poor? Why did our Lord let His blessed mother live so poor on earth? Who tried to put our Lord to death when He was a little child? In what kind of house do you think King Herod lived? Who came to see our Lord the night He was born? In what kind of place do you think the shepherds lived? Who do you think would be happier, the shepherds or Herod? What made the shepherds happy? What made Herod miserable? Why do you think the shepherds were satisfied to be poor?

What Commandment do people break when they envy others? Whom do they disobey when they envy others? Why do you always keep from envying others? What Commandment do people break when they are jealous of others? Who was jealous of God? What happened to the

bad angels when they became jealous of God? Who tries to make people jealous of others? Why does the devil try to make people jealous? Whom does he want them to disobey? Why does he want them to disobey God? Why does he hate God? Why is it a sin to be jealous of others? Whom do people disobey when they are jealous of others? What Commandment do people break when they are jealous of those who are richer than they; more handsome; sing better; have finer clothes; have more friends; know more; have a better position than they have? Whom do people disobey when they desire what belongs to others? Why did God give us the Tenth Commandment? Why does God want us to respect what belongs to others? Who gives us all that we have? Why do we need houses and money and the like?

About twelve hundred years ago when Stephen III was Pope, King Pepin gave much property to the Church. He wanted the Pope to be free and he wanted him to have money to build churches and schools and to help people in all parts of the world. So he gave the Pope the city of Rome and other towns around it. He called it all the States of the Church. The Pope ruled the people there until fifty years ago, when the

soldiers of Italy took the city and nearly all the church property from the Church. Now, could you tell any one what king gave the States of the Church to the Church? Why did King Pepin give all this property to the Pope? Who was Pope then? What did the Pope do with the money he obtained?

When did God tell us to keep from desiring what belongs to others? What Commandment do people break when they are jealous of others? Who were jealous of our Lord? What made the Pharisees jealous of our Lord? Why do some people hate the Catholic Church? What is the Seventh Commandment? What Commandment do people break when they take what belongs to the Church? What Commandment do they break when they are jealous of the Catholic Church?

What Commandment do those break who are jealous of others' money; property; knowledge; position? What kind of people are always contented with what they have? Where do we get all that we have? Why are good people contented with what they have? Why do you think it is easier for poor people to love God? Why did the saints love to be poor? You know that the religious, that is, priests, brothers, and sisters who join religious orders, take a vow to be poor

all their life. This is the vow of poverty. They also take the vows of chastity and obedience. How do you think the Apostles lived? Our Lord, when He sent them out to preach, told them not to take anything for the journey. He said that good people would give them lodging and something to eat. So the Apostles were very poor all their lives.

Why do you think it is good to work? Why are people more contented when they work? But, how can people be happy who have to work very hard every day? Of what can they think to make them happy? On what days should they keep from working? Why should they keep from working on Sundays and Holy Days? To whom do these days belong? Why does God want people to be contented at their work? To whom can you offer up your work every day? When will God bless your work? Who wants you to do your work well? Why is it good to be cheerful at your work? Why do you like to make others happy?

How did St. Joseph keep the Holy Family at Nazareth? Who helped St. Joseph with his work? Who did the housework? How do you know that it is noble to work? Whose example do you follow when you work? What can make

poor people happy? Why should everybody be contented? Who knows best what is good for us? What should people do when they lose all that they have? Why can they still thank God? What will God give them when they die?

In the Bible you can read about a holy man named Job. He was very rich and had many sheep and cows. But he lost all that he had. Then his children died and he became very ill. But holy Job still praised God and told Him that all these things belonged to Him. You can read about this in the Book of Job, which is a part of the Old Testament. Now, why did Job still bless God after he had lost all that he had? To whom did he say these things belonged? How could he be happy when he was so ill? How could he be happy after his children died? Where did he hope to be with them again? When do we go to our true home? Where is our true home?

How can a mother thank God when her child dies? To whom has her child gone? To whom did the child really belong? When will the mother be with her child again? Why, then, does God want us always to be contented? Why did God give us the Commandments? How do the Commandments show that God loves us? When can you thank God for giving us the Commandments?

Test Questions

1. For what are we preparing in this world? 2. What must we do to be happy in this world? 3. When will God reward our sufferings? 4. Why should we be contented with what we have? 5. What did God say in the Tenth Commandment? 6. What does God tell us to avoid in the Tenth Commandment? 7. Who put their trust in God? 8. When will God give us all that we can desire?

CHAPTER XXII

Sin

Sin is disobedience to God. Any thought, word, or deed contrary to God's law is sin. Those who commit mortal sin turn away from God; they lose God's grace. Those who die in mortal sin go to hell, where they will be separated from God forever. God is always willing to forgive repentant sinners. Venial sin makes people love God less and puts them in danger of committing mortal sin. The devil tries to lead people into sin in order to take them away from God. Sin is the worst evil in the world. Happy are those who avoid sin all their life.

Children, perhaps you would like to talk about the Commandments. Some time you might wish to tell somebody why God gave us the Commandments. Tell us what you would say. Tell me about those who obey God and those who disobey Him. Tell me about your life, your body, your soul. Who gave you your life? What did God give you for your life in this world? Who tells you how to use all the things that God has given you? Who tells you how to use the powers of your body and your soul? Tell me now about your eyes; your ears; your voice; your mind; your will.

What does God want you to do with your life on earth? Why does God want you to serve Him all your life? What does it show when you serve God? Why does it show that you love God when you serve Him? Whom do you obey when you keep the Commandments? Whom do you obey when you do what the Catholic Church tells you? Whom do you obey when you believe all that the Catholic Church teaches? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? Whom do people disobey when they break the Commandments? Whom do they disobey when they refuse to do what the Catholic Church teaches?

Whom do people disobey when they commit sin? What, then, does it mean to commit sin? Who tells us how to be good? What sin did the bad angels commit? What made them disobey God? What made them proud? Who had made them so good and beautiful? Whom should they have thanked for being so good and beautiful? Why could the angels do nothing without God? Who gave them life and all that they have? Why, then, should they have kept from being proud?

In many parts of the Bible you can read about

the fallen angels or devils. The prophet Isaias (14, 12–15) tells about Lucifer, the chief of the fallen angels: "How thou art fallen from heaven, O Lucifer." The prophet Isaias tells how proud Lucifer was. You know the Book of Isaias is a book of the Old Testament. The prophet Isaias lived about seven hundred fifty years before our Lord was born. He foretold many things about our Lord. He foretold that He would be born of the Blessed Virgin.

What, now, made Lucifer fall? Why did Lucifer think he could get along without God? What do you think makes many people disobey God? Why do you think pride is called the root of all sin? Against whom do people turn when they commit mortal sin? What does it mean when any one turns against God? Why do sinners think they can get along without God? How does pride make them think that? Why do some people refuse to obey God? Why do they neglect to serve Him? What makes people proud? Who gives them their life and their powers of mind and body? Whom should they thank for all that they have? When are people humble? Why do humble people thank God for all that they have? What kind of people know that they can have nothing without God?

What kind of people think that they do not need God? What kind of people think that they are better than others? Where did Lucifer try to put himself? How did the devil lead Adam and Eve to disobey God? Why did Adam and Eve want to be like gods? What made them proud? Where can you read about the fall of Adam and Eve?

Why have we nothing of ourselves? Where do we get all that we have? Why, then, should we always be humble? What do we do when we are humble? Why do you say the Confiteor every day? Let me hear you say it. *Ask some one to say the Confiteor.* How does it show that you are humble when you say the Confiteor? What do we acknowledge to God? What do you ask the Blessed Virgin, the Apostles, and the saints to do for you?

What must we have from God to save our soul? Why do we need God's grace? Of course, you have noticed the priest at the foot of the altar before he begins Mass. What does the priest do before he ascends the altar steps? Why does he bow down and say the Confiteor? Yes; he whispers to God and tells Him that he is not worthy to offer the holy Sacrifice of the Mass. He asks the angels and saints to pray for him

so that God will make him worthy. Then when he goes up, he kisses the altar and says this beautiful little prayer: "Take away from us, we beseech Thee, O Lord, our iniquities that we may go into Thy Holy of Holies with pure minds, through Christ our Lord. We beg Thee, O Lord, through the merits of the saints whose relics are here and of all the saints that Thou deign to pardon all my sins." Of course you know there are always relics of the martyrs in the altar stone.

Why do you think the saints were so humble? Whom did they thank for all that they had? How, then, shall you think of yourselves? For what shall you thank God? Why shall you always try to obey God? For what do you need God? Whom shall you thank if you can learn better than others? What shall you do if you have a better home than others? What shall you do if you can serve God better than others? What shall you say in your heart if others praise you? What shall you feel if you are placed over others?

Many great men and women were saints; some of them were kings and queens. About a thousand years ago there lived a holy king in Bohemia named St. Wenceslaus. At night he used to take off his royal robes and go barefoot, like a

poor man, to visit the poor and the sick. He used to make altar breads for the priest and serve Mass. He was happy when he could humble himself and serve others. Why do you think St. Wenceslaus wanted to be humble? Why did he go to visit the poor and the sick? How many people do you love? Why do you love all the people in the world? What would you like to do for the poor and sick?

What is it when people disobey God? What kind of sin sends people to hell? What sin turns people against God? What kind of sin do people commit when they realize that they are doing something very bad? What kind of sin is it if they do something wrong without thinking? Whom does venial sin displease? What kind of sin do people commit when they are willing to do something very bad? What kind of sin do they commit when they do something wrong before they have time to think? What kind of sin is it when any one gets angry before he knows it? Whom does venial sin make people love less?

Why do you always try to avoid even venial sin? What kind of sin is it when some one strikes another without thinking? What kind of sin is it when a child disobeys his parents without realizing what he is doing? What kind

of sin is it to say bad words without thinking? What kind of sin is it when any one stops to think and then is willing to disobey God and do something very bad? Why is mortal sin the worst thing in the world? What is the only thing that can make people really miserable?

Why did God give us our life? What does God want us to do with our life? Why does God want us to serve Him in this world? What sin do they commit who think only of getting rich? What do they neglect? Why is it a sin to love the things of this world too much? Whom do you love more than all the things in this world? Who gives you all the good things that you have? When do the good things of this world lead the people away from God? What does the sin of greed make the people do? What sins come from loving the things of this world too much? What often makes people hard and uncharitable to the poor? What often makes people take what belongs to others?

What kind of sin do they commit when they take what belongs to others? What sometimes makes people charge too much for their goods? Why do people sometimes love money too much? To whom do all things in the world belong? Why is greed for riches and money a sin? What

does God want us to desire in this world? When shall we be truly happy? What sins come from greed? What sometimes makes people pay their workers too little? What often makes some people work on Sundays? What makes some people charge too much rent?

Why do you think God gives some people more than they need? What does He want them to do for others? For whom are we taking care of the things we have? Who tells us how to use what we have? Who tells us how to use our life? Who tells us how to use our mind? How do people commit sin with their mind? What Commandment do they break when they take pleasure in thinking of bad things? What kind of desires must be put away? Whom do people disobey when they are willing to have bad desires? What kind of sin do they commit if they take pleasure in these bad desires? What does mortal sin take away from their soul? What is God's grace to our soul?

What kind of sin do they commit if they have bad desires without thinking? What does venial sin do to people? When do they love God less? What other sin are they liable to commit if they commit venial sin often? How do some people commit sin with their eyes; their

ears; their voice? Why does God want us to keep our body pure? Where will our body be after the end of the world?

Whom do people disobey when they get angry? What often makes people injure others? What sometimes makes people kill others? When is anger a mortal sin? What kind of sin is anger when it makes a person desire to kill another? What kind of sin is it if it makes one hate another? When is anger a venial sin? Who wants us always to be kind to others? Why does God want us to be kind to others? How does anger make others unhappy? Why are people not happy who are always getting angry? Why is it good to learn to be kind and patient? Why do you think God wants us to be always kind and patient? Why do you forgive those who are unkind to you? For whom did our Lord pray when He was hanging on the cross?

What Commandment do people break when they envy others? What made the bad angels turn against God? What did the devils envy in God? Why do the devils tempt us to sin? What do the devils envy in us? Why do the devils envy good in us? Whom do people imitate when they envy others? Whom do people disobey when they envy others? What kind of

sin do they commit when they are willing to envy others very much?

What other sins does envy sometimes make people commit? What sometimes makes people lie about others? What often makes people take away the good name of others? Why do people sometimes ridicule those who are good? What sin do people commit when they eat or drink too much? What Commandment do they break when they commit the sin of gluttony? Whom do they disobey when they commit the sin of gluttony? Why does God want us to take proper care of our body? What kind of sin is it if any one makes himself sick by eating? But, what kind of sin is it if he didn't think he was eating enough to make him sick? What does the habit of eating too much do for the body?

Why do you always try to eat quietly and slowly? Why do you like to show good manners before others? Why is it vulgar to be always talking about things to eat? When do people seem to be thinking too much about things to eat? When is gluttony a mortal sin? What kind of sin is it if they don't realize what they are doing? What kind of sin does any one commit if he drinks so much liquor that he doesn't know what he is doing? How does drunkenness

injure the mind and body? What often makes men neglect their family? What often makes men fight and injure others? What often leads them to curse and swear? What often leads them to think, say, and do bad things?

How do people sin by being lazy? What do they often neglect because they are lazy? What does the sin of sloth make people do? What does the sin of sloth make some people neglect on Sunday morning? What often makes people neglect their prayers? What sin makes some people neglect their family? What sin do people commit who neglect to serve God? What makes some people careless about religion? Why do some people neglect the Sacraments?

Now, what is the only real evil in the world? What does mortal sin do to people? Whom do people follow when they commit mortal sin? What happens to those who die in mortal sin? What will they suffer in hell? When will God forgive those who commit mortal sin? What Sacrament must they receive? What sins must they tell in Confession? What sin do they commit if they hide a mortal sin in Confession? Why is it good also to tell venial sins in Confession? How does it help people to avoid venial sins? Who helps us avoid sin? What

does God give us to help us avoid sin? How often can you pray for God's grace? What can you do for sinners? Why do you like to pray for sinners? Why do you wish that they would all love God?

Test Questions

1. What does it mean to commit sin? 2. When do people disobey God? 3. What is a great sin called? 4. What is a slight sin called? 5. What is the only thing that can send people to hell? 6. What changed the disobedient angels into devils? 7. What made the bad angels hate God? 8. What are the seven capital sins?

CHAPTER XXIII

Original Sin

God made man to be happy forever in heaven with Him. All He asked was that man should love Him. He put him on earth so that he could prove his love for God. Of course the only way in which man could show his love for God would be to obey Him. So God gave Adam and Eve a commandment. If they obeyed God by keeping this commandment, they would thus prove their love for God. Then later God would take them to heaven. But Adam and Eve disobeyed God and lost their innocence and holiness. Because of their sin they became subject to many miseries of soul and body. This sin has come down to all the children of Adam and Eve, even to us. It is therefore called original sin.

Children, the last time you told me about sin. Perhaps you would like to tell me again what it means. You spoke about the fallen angels. Tell me again what sin does for people. What kind of sin sends people to hell? What should people do who commit mortal sin? When is a sin only a venial sin? Why do you always try to avoid even venial sins? Whom do people love less when they commit venial sins? Whom do

people hate when they commit mortal sin? Whom do they disobey when they commit mortal sin? Why do you always try to obey God? What do you like to do because you love God?

Tell me now, children, where all the people in the world come from; you; your parents; your brothers and sisters. Why did God put us in this world? For what are we preparing in this life? Whom shall we love forever in heaven? How many people did God make to love Him? How many of us does God want to love Him in this world? Why does God want us to learn to love Him in this world? How long shall we love Him in heaven?

Why do we love God when we know Him? If we know more about God, how much shall we love Him? How, then, can we learn to love God more and more? Why do we love God more the more we know about Him? How do you think the saints learned to love God so well? What do you think they liked best to think about? What do people do who love God? Why do you try to do all that God wants you to do? How does that show that you love God? What does it show when you serve God all your life? What do you do to be good? Whom do you obey when you always try to be good?

Who was the first man that God made? How did God form Adam's body? When did God give Adam his soul? Who was the first woman that God made? How did God form Eve's body? When did God give Eve her soul? What gives life to our body? In what part of the Bible can you read about Adam and Eve? In what kind of place did Adam and Eve live at first? What made them so happy at first? Who made them so good and holy? Where did Adam and Eve get all that they needed to live on? Why did they not need to work for a living?

Why were Adam and Eve free from sickness and suffering? Why were they free from death? Where did God intend to take them after they lived some time on earth? Why did God love Adam and Eve so much? Why did He wish to take them to heaven? What did God want Adam and Eve to prove on earth? How could Adam and Eve prove that they loved God? What does it show when you obey God? Why did God want Adam and Eve to obey Him? What do you do when you love God? Why did the good angels obey God? What did it show when the bad angels disobeyed God?

What made the bad angels disobey God? Whom did they not love any longer when they

became proud? Whom did they love too much when they became proud? What makes people love themselves too much? What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? How long will they be separated from God? Why do they hate God?

How did God want Adam and Eve to show that they loved Him? What did God intend to do for Adam and Eve if they obeyed Him? What commandment did God give to Adam and Eve? What did He say would happen to them if they ate any fruit from that tree? How many other trees could they eat from? Who came to tempt Adam and Eve? Why did the devil tempt Adam and Eve? Why was the devil jealous of Adam and Eve? Why was he sorry to see that they were good and holy? Why did he not want them to love God? What form did the devil take when he came to tempt Adam and Eve? He took the form of a serpent, or a snake. We do not know just how he could do that; nor do we know how he could talk. Perhaps he did then as he does now; he puts bad thoughts into people's minds. Undoubtedly the devil was hidden in the serpent and then put the thought into Eve's mind to make her disobey God. But of course that was the same as speaking to her. We know

that the devil did all this because God wrote it all in the Bible and the Catholic Church teaches us that God meant just what He wrote there.

What did the devil say to Eve? What lie did he tell her? What did he say the fruit would do for them if they ate it? Why did Adam and Eve want to be like God? Who tempted Adam and Eve to be proud? What happened as soon as Adam and Eve became proud? Whom did they disobey? What kind of sin did they commit when they ate the forbidden fruit? Why was it a mortal sin to eat the forbidden fruit? What does it mean to disobey God? What is the worst thing in the world? What did it show when Adam and Eve disobeyed God? How did it show that they did not love God? What would they have done if they had really loved God? What did Adam and Eve lose when they disobeyed God? Why did they lose God's grace? What is the only thing that can take away God's grace from the soul?

Why were Adam and Eve no longer good and holy after they disobeyed God? What takes goodness and holiness away from people? Why are you always careful to avoid sin? What did Adam and Eve have to do for a living after they fell into sin? Why do people have to work so

hard now? What place did Adam and Eve have to leave after they disobeyed God? What did Adam and Eve have to suffer after that? Why do we suffer so much sickness and misery now? Why did Adam and Eve have to die?

You know that in the beginning Adam and Eve knew everything about the world. They knew all that people can know. Besides, their will was very strong. Before they became proud they always chose what was right. What happened to Adam and Eve's knowledge after they fell into sin? How much do you think they knew after that? Why do you think they couldn't understand things so well after they disobeyed God? What weakened their will after that?

Who were some of Adam and Eve's children? Tell me about Cain and Abel. Where can you read about them? Adam and Eve had many children. One's name was Seth. You can read in the Bible about the children of Adam and Eve. It tells there about those who lived for hundreds and hundreds of years. In what sin were Cain and Abel born? In what sin were Seth and all the other children of Adam and Eve born? Why did Cain and Abel and Seth have to suffer? What did they have to do to live? How much knowledge did they have?

Why were Cain, Abel, Seth, and the other children of Adam and Eve not good and holy when they were born? Why did they have a weak will? Why were they ignorant? Why could they not go to heaven when they died? In what condition were the children of Cain, Abel, and Seth born? Why did they have to suffer sickness and death? Why were they inclined to do evil? What made their will so weak? Why could they not go to heaven when they died? In what condition were their children's children born? Why did they have to suffer sickness and death? Why were they not good and holy when they were born? Why could they not go to heaven when they died?

From whom did they get Adam and Eve's sin? How did Adam and Eve's sin come upon them? In what sin were all the people born after that? In what sin was Noah born? Tell me what happened in the time of Noah. Tell me about Noah's sacrifice. Why did Noah offer sacrifice to God? What sacrifice does the priest offer in our churches? What does the priest offer in the Sacrifice of the Mass? How much did Noah know when he was born? What did Noah's children have to do to know anything?

In what condition was Abraham born? Why

did he have to suffer sickness and death? Who was Abraham's son? Tell me what Abraham was going to do with Isaac on the mountain. (*See the Book of Genesis.*) How did the sin of Adam and Eve come upon Isaac? How did it come upon Abraham? How did it come upon Abraham's parents? How many sons did Jacob have? Tell me about Joseph. Tell me where you can read about Joseph and his brothers. The Book of Genesis gives us a history of the people that lived in the world from the time of Adam. You see God wanted us to know how He took care of His people and how He tried to teach them to love Him.

Now, what would you tell anybody about the Book of Genesis? What history does it tell us? Why did God write all this about the people that lived in the world? But you were speaking about the twelve sons of Jacob. How did Adam's sin come upon them? How did it come upon Jacob himself? Why did they have to suffer sickness and death? Why could they not go to heaven when they died?

Why do we say that the gates of heaven were closed? Why could no one go to heaven all that time? Whom did God promise to send to open the gates of heaven again? To whom did God

make that promise? Yes; He promised Adam and Eve that He would send God the Son to redeem all the people in the world. He told them that the Blessed Virgin would be our Lord's mother.

In what condition are all the people in the world born? How many people are born in the sin of Adam and Eve? Who is the only human being who was always free from the sin of Adam and Eve? Why was the Blessed Virgin kept free from original sin? What is that favor to the Blessed Virgin called? When is the feast of the Immaculate Conception? What are we obliged to do on that day? Why are we obliged to go to Mass and sanctify that day? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on the feast of the Immaculate Conception? What do the white vestments signify?

Why do we have to study so hard to learn? Why are we subject to sickness and death? Why is there so much misery in the world? What sin is called original sin? How does original sin come upon us? How many people are born in original sin? Whom did Adam and Eve disobey when they sinned? To whom did Adam and Eve give themselves when they disobeyed God? Why did Adam and Eve's children belong to the devil then? What made all the people slaves of

the devil after that? Where did the devil want to take the people?

Who came to free the people from the devil? When did God promise to send our Lord to free us from the devil? To whom do people give themselves when they commit sin? Whose slaves are they then? Whom do people obey when they commit sin? Whom did Adam and Eve obey when they ate the forbidden fruit? What evils did Adam and Eve's sin bring on the world? Why is there so much ignorance in the world? What brought sickness and death into the world?

What does the Immaculate Conception mean? Why did God keep the Blessed Virgin free from sin? Who is the purest creature that God created? What happened to the bad angels when they disobeyed God? What would have happened to all the people in the world if God hadn't promised to send our Redeemer?

Of course the people who lived before our Lord came could not go to heaven. But if they believed what God had told them about our Lord, they could be saved. So there were many good people who believed in God. Circumcision was a sign of faith in God. Good people used to take their little children to the temple to be circumcised. (*It was a ceremony of the law.*) The Blessed

Virgin and St. Joseph took our Lord to be circumcised when He was eight days old. When is the feast of the Circumcision? What is the color of the vestments worn on that day? How could the people be saved who lived before our Lord was born? Of what was circumcision a sign?

The good people who died before our Lord was born had to wait in a place called limbo. Their souls were there waiting for our Lord to open the gates of heaven to them. After our Lord died on the cross, He went to limbo to free the souls. That is why we say in the Apostles' Creed: "He descended into hell." As you know, it was not really to hell but to limbo that He went. Now, what would you say if somebody asked you what happened to good people who died before our Lord was born? Why do we say in the Apostles' Creed? — "He descended into hell." What promise shows how much God loves us? Why did God promise Adam and Eve to send our Saviour? Why did God want to save us all from hell?

Why does God wish to have us with Him in heaven? How does it make you feel when you know all this about God? What makes you love God more and more? Why does it make you love God more when you learn more about Him?

Test Questions

1. When were Adam and Eve innocent and holy? 2. Why did God ask Adam and Eve to obey Him? 3. What did God command Adam and Eve? 4. Why did the devil tempt Adam and Eve? 5. What did the devil tell Adam and Eve? 6. Why did Adam and Eve disobey God? 7. What did Adam and Eve lose when they disobeyed God? 8. What is original sin?

CHAPTER XXIV

The Redemption

God promised a Redeemer to Adam and Eve after they had fallen into sin. He promised to send His own divine Son to redeem the world from the power of the devil. The prophets foretold that our Saviour would be born of the Blessed Virgin Mary in the town of Bethlehem. God sent the Angel Gabriel to tell the Blessed Virgin that she was to be the mother of our divine Redeemer. Our Lord and Saviour, Jesus Christ, was born in a stable at Bethlehem. He had come to redeem the world from the devil and to save all men.

You told me the last time, children, about Adam and Eve. Perhaps you would like to talk about them again. Tell me how they lived and what God intended to do for them. Tell me how they happened to fall into sin. Tell me also how that sin came down to us. What, then, is original sin? Where were the souls of the just who died after that? What promise did God make to Adam and Eve after they fell into sin? Why did God take pity on us? Why did He love us so much?

What kind of people believed that God would

keep His promise? Why did the good people have hope then? How could people be saved after Adam and Eve's sin? What happened to those good people when they died? Why did they have to wait in limbo? Where can you read about God's promise to Adam and Eve? In what part of the Bible can you read this? What person of the Blessed Trinity did God promise to send to free the world from sin? What gave the people hope after Adam and Eve fell into sin? To whom did God first make this promise? What promise did God make to Abraham later? If you would pass from Abraham to Isaac and to Jacob and so on from father to son, you would finally come to the family to which our Lord's blessed mother belonged. You can read about this in the first chapter of St. Matthew's Gospel. There you can see that our Lord was a descendant from Abraham. God told the prophets many things about our Lord.

How did Abraham know that our Lord would be born of his people? From whom was the Blessed Virgin Mary descended? The prophet Isaias foretold that the Blessed Virgin was to be our Lord's mother. How did the prophet Isaias know that the Blessed Virgin was to be our Lord's mother? You know that the Book of Isaias is

a part of the Bible. It is a book of the Old Testament. The prophet Micheas foretold that our Lord would be born in Bethlehem. Who told the prophet Micheas this? The Book of Micheas is also a part of the Bible. Who sent the Angel Gabriel from heaven? To whom did the Angel Gabriel come? What did the Angel Gabriel say to the Blessed Virgin Mary? When do you say those words? Let me hear you say the Hail Mary.

Where did the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph live when the Angel Gabriel came? In what kind of house did they live? What did the Angel Gabriel tell the Blessed Virgin about our Lord? When did the Blessed Virgin learn that she was to be our Lord's mother? What did the angel say our Lord's name was to be? What does the name Jesus mean? In what month did the Angel Gabriel appear to the Blessed Virgin? On about what day did he come? What do we call that day now? Yes; it is the feast of the Annunciation. It is the day on which the Angel Gabriel told the Blessed Virgin that she was to be our Lord's mother. It is not a Holy Day, but good people like to go to Mass on that day. You can read about the Angel Gabriel in the Gospel of St. Luke, Ch. 2.

Why does the priest wear white vestments on the feast of the Annunciation? On what day is the feast of the Annunciation? What did the Angel Gabriel tell the Blessed Virgin on that day? What happened the next December after the Angel Gabriel told the Blessed Virgin that she was to be our Lord's mother? Tell me now about our Lord's birth. Tell me the kind of place in which He was born. Tell me about the shepherds. Who told the shepherds that our Saviour had been born? Who sent the angels to the shepherds? What did the shepherds do when the angels told them? What did they do when they found the Blessed Infant? Why did they adore Him?

How long had our Lord been God? How long will our Lord be God? Why did our Lord become a little baby? Whom did He come to save from hell? Why do we call our Lord our Saviour? Who were with the Blessed Infant when the shepherds came? What would you have done if you had been with them? How long would you have wanted to stay there? What do you think the Blessed Virgin would have said to you? Why would you have asked her to let you hold the little Jesus in your arms? When can you take our Lord in your breast? How often

can you receive our Lord in Holy Communion? What form did our Lord have in Bethlehem? What form has our Lord in the Holy Eucharist? How does our Lord take the form of bread and wine?

On what day was our Lord born? On what day of the year is Christmas? Whose birthday is Christmas? Why does everybody try to be happy on Christmas? What is the best Christmas gift you can receive? Why is Holy Communion the best gift you can receive? How do people try to show their love for one another on Christmas? How many people does our Lord love?

Where did they take our Lord when He was eight days old? Why did they take our Lord to the Temple? How old was our Lord when He was circumcised? What day of the year is the feast of the Circumcision? Why do we all have to go to Mass on New Year's Day?

When did they give our Lord His name? How did the Blessed Virgin know what name to give Him? What do you do when you hear the name of Jesus? Why do you lift the hat or bow the head? Who do you think was the first ever to call our Lord Jesus? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on Christmas

and New Year's? What color is used on all the feasts of our Lord?

I am sure you know the story of the three kings or wise men. They came from a great distance and brought precious gifts to the blessed child Jesus. They were guided by a star to the stable. They were called Gaspar, Melchior, and Balthasar. We celebrate their feast on the 6th of January. It is called the feast of the Epiphany. It is not a Holy Day, but many people like to go to Mass on that day. Now what could you tell anybody about the three kings? What were they called? How did they find the stable in which our Lord was? When do we celebrate the feast of the three kings? What is the color of the vestments used on the feast of the Epiphany? Tell me about the blessing of the three kings.

Of course you have seen the Christmas crib. Tell me what you have seen in the crib. Tell me why we have the Christmas crib in our churches. Of what do you think when you pray before the crib? What do those figures make you think about? You will be surprised to know, children, that a part of our Lord's true crib is still kept in Rome. It is in one of the most beautiful churches in the world, the Church of St. Mary Major. Pieces of the true crib were brought from Bethle-

hem to Rome many hundreds of years ago. Now, what could you tell anybody about our Lord's true crib? What would you do now if you were in Rome?

On Christmas Day the priest says three Masses. Do you know why Christ's birthday is called Christmas? It is the day of Christ's Mass. That means that the Masses said on that day are in honor of Christ's birth. Why did our Lord come down from heaven? From what sin did our Lord come to redeem us? From whom does original sin come? How long had the world waited for our Lord to come? How could good people be saved during those four thousand years? What are the four weeks before Christmas called? Advent means the coming. During those four weeks we prepare for the coming of our Lord at Christmas. That is why we fast and do penance during Advent. On the Sundays of Advent the priest wears purple vestments. They are a sign of penance. Advent is to remind us of the four thousand years that the people waited for the coming of Christ. Now, if anybody asked you what Advent means, what would you say? Why do we fast and do penance during Advent? Why does the priest wear purple vestments in Advent?

Why did our Lord come to save us from hell?

Why does God want us with Him in heaven forever? Whose children are we all? Who had led God's children away from Him? Whom did God send to lead His children back to Him? What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? What can our Lord do? What does our Lord know? In what are the three divine persons equal?

In whose power were the people when our Lord came? Why did God want to free the people from the power of the devil? What put the people in the power of the devil? What sin did Adam and Eve commit? Who made Adam and Eve disobey God? Whom did Adam and Eve obey when they fell into sin? Whom do people obey when they commit sin?

Why does God love us so much? To whom do we belong? Why did God make us? Just see how much God loves us. He sent His own divine Son to lead us back to Him. We were all like children who were lost. So our Lord came to help us find the way to our true home and to lead us back to our Heavenly Father.

Why do you think our Lord was born so poor? What did He want to teach us by being so poor? Why does God want us not to love the things of this world? For what are we preparing in this

world? Who is our Lord's mother? How do you know our Lord was truly man? When did our Lord become one of us? What kind of body did our Lord have? How big was our Lord when He was born? How did our Lord become a big man? Where did our Lord live when He was a boy? *Here it would be impressive to compare Him with boys in the class.* What do you think our Lord did when He was just as big as you?

You know St. Elizabeth was the Blessed Virgin's cousin. She was St. John the Baptist's mother. St. John was our Lord's second cousin. He was just about six months older than our Lord. They say they used to play together when they were little. St. John was sent by God to prepare the people to receive our Lord. He was a very holy man and is called the precursor or the forerunner of our Lord.

What would you like to have done if you had lived in Nazareth when our Lord was a little boy? What do you think the child Jesus did when His mother told Him to do something? Whom did the boy Jesus help at work? What person of the Blessed Trinity was the boy Jesus? With whom was He equal? How long had He been God? How long has He been man? In what

part of the Bible can you read about our Lord?

Why did our Lord have to eat and drink? Why did our Lord have to sleep? How do you know that our Lord was really human? How do you know that our Lord was really God, too? You know our Lord worked many miracles after He grew up. He cured many people of their diseases and He raised many people to life. By whose power did our Lord work miracles? How could our Lord cure people and raise the dead to life? Who gave us our life?

How many persons are there in one God? Which one of these persons was born in Bethlehem? What Church teaches us all about our Lord? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? How do we know that our Lord is both God and man? Why are you happy to believe that our Lord is both God and man? Why do you love to believe all that the Catholic Church teaches?

How do you show your love for our Lord? How did our Lord show His love for us? Why did our Lord become man? Why is He called our Saviour? From what did He come to save us? From whose power did He come to redeem us? Why is our Lord called our Redeemer?

Test Questions

1. Why had God promised to send our Lord? 2. What did the Angel Gabriel come to tell the Blessed Virgin Mary? 3. Where was our Lord born? 4. Who were the first to learn that our Lord had been born? 5. Who told the shepherds where to find our Lord? 6. Why did our Lord Jesus Christ come? 7. How long has our Saviour been God? 8. When did our Saviour become man?

CHAPTER XXV

The Blessed Virgin Mary

The Blessed Virgin is our Lord's own true mother. She is very dear to Him, and so she can help us when she prays for us. Our Lord lived with His blessed mother and St. Joseph in Nazareth for thirty years. Now they are united in heaven. We honor the Blessed Virgin Mary because she is God's mother. She is the holiest and the purest of all God's creatures. God kept her always free from original sin. St. Joseph, too, is dear to God, for he took care of our Lord and the Blessed Virgin Mary for many years.

Tell me again to-day, children, how our Lord came to earth. Tell me about Bethlehem; about the shepherds; about the three kings; about the wicked King Herod. Perhaps you would like to tell me something about St. John the Baptist, too. What relation was he to our Lord? Why did our Lord come down from heaven? Why is He called our Saviour? What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? In what are the three divine persons equal?

When did God first promise to send our Redeemer? From whose power did our Lord re-

deem us? Why did He have to free us from the power of the devil? Why did our Lord wish to free us from the devil? Why could no one go to heaven before our Saviour came? How do you know that our Lord is truly God? What Church teaches us that our Lord is truly God? Why does the Catholic Church always teach the truth?

How long had our Lord been God before He was born in Bethlehem? When did our Lord become man? What form did our Lord take in Bethlehem? What can our Lord do? What could our Lord do when He was a little baby? Of course, children, I am sure you like little babies. Tell me about some babies you know. What did your mother do for you when you were a little baby? *Lead them here to consider the tender offices of good mothers toward their little ones.*

Who is our Lord's mother? Tell me some of the things the Blessed Virgin Mary did for the child Jesus. Imagine now you were there in the stable after our Lord was born. Tell me what you think the Blessed Virgin would be doing with her divine child. What would you like to do if you were there when the Blessed Virgin was putting little Jesus to sleep? Who chose the Blessed Virgin to be our Lord's mother? Who told her that God had chosen her to be our

Lord's mother? What did the Angel Gabriel say then?

Who is the purest of all God's creatures? Why did God make the Blessed Virgin so pure and holy? Whose mother was she to be? Why did God keep the Blessed Virgin free from sin? What does the Immaculate Conception mean? When is the feast of the Immaculate Conception? What must you do on that day? Why do you have to go to Mass on that day?

Whom do you think our Lord loves best of all the people that ever lived? What do you think our Lord wants us to do for His blessed mother? Why do you think our Lord is pleased when we honor the Blessed Virgin Mary? How can you show your love for God's blessed mother? What prayers do you say to the Blessed Virgin Mary? Who was the first to say the first part of the Hail Mary? Who sent the Angel Gabriel to the Blessed Virgin Mary? What words did the Angel Gabriel say?

Do you know who said the words? — "Blessed art thou amongst women and blessed is the fruit of thy womb, Jesus." It was St. Elizabeth, the Blessed Virgin's cousin. The Blessed Virgin went to visit her after the Angel Gabriel came, and when St. Elizabeth saw her coming she said those

words. Then the Church added the last part of the Hail Mary: "Holy Mary, mother of God, pray for us sinners, now and at the hour of our death. Amen." Now, could you tell any one where the Hail Mary came from? Where did the first part come from? the second part? the third part? When is the feast of the Annunciation? When is our Lord's birthday?

The Blessed Virgin's birthday is September 8th. It is called the feast of the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin Mary. St. Joachim and St. Anne were the Blessed Virgin's parents. When she was a little girl they took her to the temple in Jerusalem to offer her to God. This day is called the feast of the Presentation of the Blessed Virgin Mary. We celebrate it on November 21st. There are many other feasts of the Blessed Virgin during the year. What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on the feasts of the Blessed Virgin Mary? What do the white vestments signify? When is the feast of the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin Mary? Who was the Blessed Virgin's mother? Who was her father?

July 26th is the feast of St. Anne. What two feasts of the Blessed Virgin are Holy Days? When is the feast of the Immaculate Conception? When is the feast of the Assumption? Of what

does the feast of the Assumption remind us? Why did our Lord take the Blessed Virgin's body to heaven? Which month is the month of Mary? How do you honor the Blessed Virgin during May? Why do you think the month of May is set aside for devotion to the Blessed Virgin? Which is one of the most beautiful months of the year?

Why do we honor the Blessed Virgin Mary so much? Who made the Blessed Virgin our Lord's mother? Who came from heaven to honor her? Why did the Angel Gabriel bow before the Blessed Virgin? What little child used to put its arms around the Blessed Virgin's neck? Who loves the Blessed Virgin more than anybody else that ever lived? Why does our Lord love the Blessed Virgin so much? Since when have good people honored the Blessed Virgin? Why do you honor the Blessed Virgin every day? What do you do to show your love for her? What prayers do you say to her?

What litany do you like to say? Why do you honor the Blessed Virgin with all those beautiful names in the litany? The Litany of the Blessed Virgin is also called the Litany of Loretto. This is because it was first said in the beautiful church containing the Holy House of Loretto. Why do you answer? — "Pray for us." Whom does the

Blessed Virgin ask to help you when you pray to her? How do you know that our Lord will help you when the Blessed Virgin prays for you to Him? Where is the Blessed Virgin now? How long will she be with her divine Son in heaven?

Who is queen of the angels in heaven? Why do the angels honor the Blessed Virgin in heaven? Who made the Blessed Virgin even purer than the angels? Why did God make the Blessed Virgin queen of the angels? Why did the Apostles honor the Blessed Virgin? To which Apostle did our Lord give His blessed mother when He was hanging on the cross? What did the Apostle St. John do for the Blessed Virgin after that? When did God make the Blessed Virgin our mother?

Why do you think the Blessed Virgin loves us so much? What does the Blessed Virgin do for us? How does she help us? Where does she want us all to go when we die? Why does she want us to go to heaven? Why does she pray to make everybody pure? Why do people have to be pure? Why did all the martyrs honor the Blessed Virgin? Whose mother is she? The early Christians honored the Blessed Virgin very much. Even to-day you can still see pictures of the Blessed Virgin in the catacombs. They

have been there for about seventeen hundred years.

Why did all the saints honor the Blessed Virgin Mary? Why did they pray to her? Of course you can say the Rosary. The Blessed Virgin gave the Rosary to St. Dominic about seven hundred years ago. St. Dominic founded the Order of Preachers, or the Dominicans. There are fifteen mysteries in the Rosary. While we are thinking about each one of these mysteries we say one Our Father and ten Hail Marys in the Rosary. We count these prayers on beads that are blessed by the priest. We generally have only one part of the Rosary in our beads. In this there are but five decades. The first Sunday of October is Rosary Sunday. October is the month of the holy Rosary. Why do you think it is good to say the Rosary every day? Whom do you honor when you say the Rosary? How many mysteries are there in the whole Rosary?

These mysteries are all great truths about our Lord and His blessed mother. There are five joyful mysteries: the Annunciation, the Visitation of the Blessed Virgin to St. Elizabeth, the Birth of Our Lord, the Presentation of Our Lord in the Temple, and the Finding of the Child Jesus in the Temple.

Then there are five sorrowful mysteries: the Prayer and Bloody Sweat of Our Lord in the Garden, the Scourging of Our Lord at the Pillar, the Crowning of Our Lord with Thorns, the Carrying of the Cross, and the Crucifixion of Our Lord.

Then there are five glorious mysteries: the Resurrection of Our Lord from the Dead, the Ascension of Our Lord into Heaven, the Coming of the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles, the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin into Heaven, and the Crowning of the Blessed Virgin as Queen of Angels.

So the Rosary is a very beautiful form of prayer. While we are saying it we think all about our Lord's life, death, and resurrection. Did you ever hear of Lourdes? About fifty years ago the Blessed Virgin Mary appeared to a little girl there, called Bernadette Soubiroux. The Blessed Virgin taught her to say the Rosary. A very beautiful church is built there now. Many miracles are performed there every year. Lourdes is in the south of France.

Why do we sometimes call our churches St. Mary's, Our Lady, the Immaculate Conception, and the like? Why do we honor the Blessed Virgin in this way? Why do we have altars and

statues and pictures of the Blessed Virgin in our churches and in our homes?

Whose house is the church? Whose picture should we find in God's house? In what Stations of the Cross do we see the picture of our Lord's mother? What happened at the Fourth Station? What happened at the Thirteenth Station? What happened at the Fourteenth Station?

Who was the Blessed Virgin's husband? Why do we honor St. Joseph so much? What did he do for our Lord and the Blessed Virgin? What kind of work did St. Joseph do? Who helped him in his work? Who was with St. Joseph when he died? To what saint do we pray for a happy death? Why are so many churches called St. Joseph's? Why do we have altars and statues and pictures of St. Joseph? Where is St. Joseph now? What can St. Joseph do for us? Why does our Lord love St. Joseph so much? Why do they often put a lily in St. Joseph's hand in pictures and statues? Of what is the lily the sign? Why is the lily the sign of purity? Why did God make St. Joseph so pure? With whom was St. Joseph to live?

Why do you think St. Joseph and the Blessed Virgin lived together like angels? Why do we

pray to St. Joseph when we are in need? Who helped our Lord and the Blessed Virgin when they needed anything? St. Joseph did not know that the Blessed Virgin was going to be our Lord's mother until the angel came and told him. Then he was very happy.

What did St. Joseph do when Herod tried to kill the child Jesus? How did he learn what Herod was going to do? How do you think St. Joseph felt when the angel told him that? Why did Herod fail to kill the child Jesus? What do we call those little boys whom Herod killed? When is the feast of the Holy Innocents? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on that day?

How did St. Joseph know when to leave Egypt? Who sent the angel to tell St. Joseph that? Where did the Holy Family go when they returned from Egypt? What kind of place is Nazareth? What would you do if you went to Nazareth? Tell me about the Holy House of Nazareth. Tell me where it is now. When will you see the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph? When will you be able to talk to them? With whom will you be in heaven? How do you think the Blessed Virgin and St. Joseph know when you pray to them?

Test Questions

1. Whose mother is the Blessed Virgin Mary? 2. Who took care of our Lord when He was a little child? 3. Where did the Holy Family live? 4. Who is the purest of God's creatures? 5. Why do we honor the Blessed Virgin Mary? 6. Why do we pray to the Blessed Virgin Mary? 7. When did our Lord give us the Blessed Virgin Mary to be our mother? 8. Who was the Blessed Virgin's husband?

CHAPTER XXVI

The Crucifixion

When our Lord was thirty years old, He went forth to preach the Gospel. For three years He went about doing good and teaching the people to love God. But He was falsely accused and condemned to death. He was crucified on Mount Calvary between two thieves. Thus He died to save us from hell and to redeem us from the power of the devil. When our Lord died the gates of heaven were opened. Thereafter those who gained God's grace would be saved. Our Lord suffered and died out of love for us.

Children, perhaps you would like to talk again about the Blessed Virgin Mary. Tell me about her and about our Lord when He was a little boy. Tell me about the Holy Family at Nazareth. How long did our Lord live at Nazareth with His blessed mother and St. Joseph? What do you think our Lord did for His blessed mother all those thirty years?

When did God first promise to send His own divine Son to redeem the world? How did all the people come into the power of the devil? Why was our Lord born upon this earth? Why did our Lord wish to redeem the people? Why did

He wish to lead the people back to God? How do you learn to love God? Why do you love God when you know Him? What do you do to love God better?

How can we learn more about God? Who founded the Catholic Church? What did our Lord teach the people? What Church teaches us all that our Lord taught?

Why did our Lord teach the people about God? When do people love God? Why do you love God when you know Him? When do people serve God? Why do you serve God when you love Him? Who serve God best? How old was our Lord when He set out to teach the people? Where did our Lord go to preach? In what country did He travel when He was preaching? What people lived in Palestine then?

The Jews are also called Israelites or Hebrews. They were the chosen people of God. They were descended from Abraham, from Isaac, and from Jacob. The Old Testament gives the history of the chosen people. The patriarchs and prophets belonged to this people. God loved them very much. But they put our Lord to death when He came to save them. Since that time the nation has been scattered throughout the world.

What did our Lord do for the people when He was going around among them? How did He show His love for the sick? What others did He help? What did He do for the blind; the deaf and dumb; the lame? What did He sometimes do for dead people? Can you tell me some of those whom our Lord brought back to life? Perhaps you could tell me about Lazarus. You can read about him in the Gospel of St. John, Ch. 11. Then you can also read in the New Testament how our Lord raised a young girl to life in St. Matthew 9; St. Mark 5; St. Luke 8; and a poor widow's son in St. Luke 7. How could our Lord cure people and raise the dead to life? Whose power did He use to do this? Why could our Lord do all things?

Why did great crowds of people follow our Lord? Why did they wish to listen to His teaching? Why did the people love our Lord so much? Why was our Lord so good and kind to the people? What did our Lord do to show His love for them? Why do you love all the people in the world? How do you show that you love people? What can you do for all the people in the world? What will God do every time you pray for them? How do you show that you love your father and mother; your sisters and

brothers; your friends? Why do you always try to be polite when you are with others? Why are you always kind to your schoolmates?

Why do you love everybody? Whose children are we all? Who loves us all? Why does God love us all? What is God to us? Whose children are you treating kindly when you do good to others? How can you show that you love sick people? What can you do to show your love for poor people? What do you like to do for people when you love them? How many people did our Lord love? How did our Lord show His love for the people? Who taught us to do good to others all our life? What does it show when you are good and kind to others? Who belong to God's family? Why are we all like brothers and sisters? Why do you like to help one another? What Church teaches us to love one another? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

How can you show your love for sinners? What did our Lord do for sinners? Whom did our Lord come to save? Why do we all call ourselves sinners? In what sin are we born? Why do good people call themselves sinners? What kind of faults do good people commit? How do good people feel when they forget and

commit a fault? Who helps you avoid sin every day? What do you ask God to keep you from when you pray? Why do you say? — "deliver us from evil." What is that evil?

Who taught us the Our Father? What twelve men did our Lord choose to go with Him? What did our Lord teach the twelve Apostles? Who was the chief of the Apostles? Who was the first Pope? What were the Apostles to be in the Church after our Lord returned to heaven?

What did the Pharisees do when they saw how the people loved our Lord? Why did they accuse Him falsely? Why were they jealous of Him? Why do some people say unkind things about the Catholic Church? Whose Church is the Catholic Church? Which Apostle betrayed our Lord? Judas sold our Lord for thirty pieces of silver. Where was our Lord when the soldiers came to take Him? Who was leading them? Judas told them to watch him and that he would go up and kiss our Lord so that they would know Him. So he betrayed our Lord with a kiss. You see Judas loved money too much. That is why he sold our Lord.

What was our Lord doing in the Garden of Gethsemane when the soldiers came to arrest Him? What did they do with our Lord after

they arrested Him? What did they put on His head? What did they do after they put the crown of thorns on His head? What did our Lord do while they were doing this? Why did our Lord suffer all this in silence? What did He wish to teach us? Why did our Lord forgive them all these injuries? What do you do when others are unkind to you? Why do you forgive them? What do you do when others accuse you falsely? Who taught you to forgive them? Who was the ruler who condemned our Lord to death?

What kind of cross did they make for our Lord? Who carried this heavy cross? To what place did our Lord carry it? In what city was that? What happened to our Lord on the way to Mount Calvary? What made our Lord fall several times? Where is Mount Calvary? Why do you say the Stations of the Cross? Of what do they make us think? How many stations are there? Tell me about them.

Of what do you think when you are making the Stations of the Cross? What did the soldiers do with our Lord when they reached the top of Mount Calvary? How did they fasten Him to the cross? How long did our Lord hang on the cross before He died? Our Lord hung on the cross from about noon until three o'clock in the

afternoon. Why do many good people pray for three hours on Good Friday? Why are those three hours' prayer called the Holy Agony? What do those good people think about during those three hours? How does that help them love our Lord more than ever? Why did our Lord die for us? Why did our Lord redeem us? How long will our Lord love us?

When is Good Friday? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on Good Friday? At what other times does he wear black vestments? Why do people wear black when their relatives die? You know Good Friday is the only day in the year on which there is no Mass. On Good Friday the priest does not say Mass. He does not change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood. At the ceremony on that day he receives Holy Communion, but the people do not. The Blessed Sacrament is not kept in the church on that day. So we know how good people must have felt after our Lord died.

Why do we adore the cross on Good Friday especially? Whom do we really adore when we adore the cross? Why do you like to kiss the crucifix? For whom do you show love when you kiss the crucifix? Why do good people

always have the crucifix in their homes? Of what does the crucifix remind us? Why do you make the Sign of the Cross? What persons do you name when you make the Sign of the Cross? How do you show that you believe in the Blessed Trinity when you make the Sign of the Cross? Why do we have crosses on our churches and schools? Of what is the cross the sign? Why is the cross the sign of our Faith?

You have heard about Constantine the Great. He was the Emperor of Rome about three hundred years after the time of our Lord. At first he was a pagan, but his mother, St. Helena, was a Christian. Once when Constantine was going to battle with his army, he saw a beautiful cross in the sky. Upon it was written: "In this sign you shall conquer." After that Constantine became a Christian and the pagans could no longer put the Christians to death. Constantine built many beautiful churches, among them the first St. Peter's Church in Rome.

Now, could you tell anybody about the Emperor Constantine? What did he see in the sky? What was written on the cross? When did Constantine live? Who was his mother? After that St. Helena went to Jerusalem and found our Lord's true cross. A part of the true

cross is now kept in the Church of Holy-Cross-in-Jerusalem at Rome.

Who were crucified with our Lord? What did our Lord do for one of the thieves? Why did our Lord forgive him his sins? Why was this thief sorry for his sins? Why could not our Lord forgive the other thief? What would our Lord have done if he had asked Him to forgive him?

You know when St. Helena went to seek our Lord's cross, she found the three crosses together. To learn which was our Lord's cross they took the three crosses to a dead person. They touched the body with two of the crosses and nothing happened. But when they touched it with the third cross, the dead person came to life. So they knew that was our Lord's cross.

For whom did our Lord pray when He was hanging on the cross? What did He ask God the Father to do for those who had nailed Him to the cross? For whom did the martyrs pray when they were dying? Why do you pray for those who injure you? Who taught us to love our enemies? How can we show our love for our enemies? How did our Lord show His love for His enemies? How did the martyrs show their love for their enemies? When were the

gates of heaven opened for us? How long had the gates of heaven been closed? What closed them? Why did our Lord die upon the cross? From what did He free us when He died?

In what prayer do we mention our Lord's suffering and death? Say the Apostles' Creed. *Interrupt at:* "*He descended into hell.*" Why do you say?—"He descended into hell." To what place did our Lord really go? Who were in limbo? For what were the good people waiting in limbo? Was their soul or their body there? What had happened to their body? How could anybody get to heaven after our Lord died? Whom do we have to serve to gain heaven? When do people serve God? What do people do for God when they love Him? How do people learn to love God? Why do we love God when we know Him? What do we learn about God when we really know Him?

Why do we need God's grace? How many of us need God's grace to gain heaven? When did our Lord gain God's grace for us? For how many people did our Lord gain God's grace when He died on the cross? What do we have to do to gain God's grace? In how many Sacraments does God give us His grace? When do we receive the grace which our Lord gained for us?

For what do you thank our Lord every day? How did our Lord show His love for us? How do we show our love for our Lord? How do we know all that God wants us to do? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? What grace do the Sacraments give us? Who gained this grace for us? When did our Lord gain this grace for us?

Test Questions

1. Why did our Lord go into the Garden of Gethsemane? 2. What did a band of soldiers do to our Lord? 3. How did the soldiers treat our Lord after they took Him prisoner? 4. To whom did the soldiers lead our Lord? 5. Who condemned our Lord to death? 6. Where did our Lord carry the heavy cross? 7. What did they do to put our Lord to death? 8. Why did our Lord die?

CHAPTER XXVII

Death — Purgatory

We shall all die some day. When we die, our soul will be separated from our body. Though our body will turn to dust, our soul will still live. It will live forever. To go to heaven our soul must be free from every stain of sin. Even venial sin will keep people from heaven. In purgatory souls are cleansed from venial sin and they satisfy for other sins that have been forgiven. Purgatory is a proof of God's mercy and love for us.

Tell me, again, children, about our Lord's death. Tell me about the cross, Mount Calvary, and how they put our Lord to death. What did they do with our Lord's body after they took Him down from the cross? Which of the stations shows how they buried our Lord? What does the Thirteenth Station show?

Of course you have been to funerals. Tell me about some people who have died. *Here the children will readily speak about their own dead. Have them tell about deaths in their own family.*

What happens to people when they die? What happens to their body? When does the soul leave the body? When do good people go to

God? When are we going to our true home? Who will be waiting for us there? What is God to us? To whom, then, are we really going when we die? Why does our Heavenly Father want us with Him in heaven? Where did your (*indicating the proper child*) little brother (or sister) go when he died? To whom did he go then? *Apply this to the cases of death mentioned.*

What kind of people go to heaven? Where do people go who die in mortal sin? What will they suffer in hell? How long will they be in hell? With whom will they be in hell? What is the only thing that can send people to hell? What kind of sin is mortal sin? What do people have to know to make a sin mortal? What kind of sin is it if they know that it is very bad? What kind of sin do people commit when they are willing to turn away from God? What kind of sin do they commit if they do something that is not very bad? What kind of sin is it if they commit a fault without thinking?

Why must your soul be free from all sin to go to heaven? With whom shall you be in heaven? Why do you always try to avoid even venial sins? Where do people go who die in venial sin? What sin is taken away in purgatory? Where is venial sin taken away from those who die in it? When

is a soul as pure as an angel? From how many sins must a soul be free to be pure? How are people who die in venial sin cleansed from it? What do the souls suffer in purgatory? Why do they have to suffer in fire? What sins do their sufferings take away from them? Why can nobody go to heaven with venial sin on his soul? When is your soul as pure as an angel? Tell me some one whose soul was as pure as an angel. From what sins was the Blessed Virgin free? Where did the Blessed Virgin go when she died?

Where did St. Joseph go when he died? Why did St. Joseph go straight to heaven? When do people go straight to heaven? From whom are the souls separated in purgatory? When will they see God? How long do the souls have to stay in purgatory? What happens when they are cleansed from sin? Who will have to suffer longer in purgatory? Who will have to stay the shortest time in purgatory? Where will the souls go when they are freed from purgatory?

When will God forgive people their sins on earth? What do people have to do if they want God to forgive their mortal sins? What Sacrament must they receive? For what must they be sorry? What must they promise? What must they do after their sin has been forgiven?

Why do they have to do penance? Who tells them to do penance? Where do they go if they die before they have done enough penance for their sins? Why do people fast and pray so much? For what are they doing penance when they fast and pray? For what are they doing penance when they do good works? What, then, satisfies for sin?

Where can people satisfy for their sins if they die before they have done enough penance? Who knows how long they will have to suffer in purgatory? What will God do when they have satisfied for their sins? How does purgatory show that God loves us? Who could never go to heaven if there were no purgatory? Why do you think God gave us purgatory? Why did God want to make our souls pure?

What is God to us? Why does God cleanse our souls in purgatory? Who loves the souls in purgatory? Why does God love the souls in purgatory? Whose children are they? Why do you love the souls in purgatory? What Church teaches us about purgatory? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Why does the Catholic Church always teach the truth? Which person of the Blessed Trinity always stays with the Catholic Church?

What can you do to show your love for the souls in purgatory? What good does it do the souls in purgatory when you pray for them? How does that help them? Who wants you to pray for them? Why does God want you to pray for them? How often can you pray for the souls in purgatory? What does God do for them when you pray for them? What does it show when you pray for them? How many of the poor souls do you love? Why do you love them all? Whose children are they? Tell me some of those you pray for. *Here some of the children will mention father, mother, brother, sister. Utilize these cases to impress the teaching upon them.* Why did you like to do things for your mother (*as the case may be*) when she was alive? What did that show when you did nice things for her? How did you feel when you could show your love for her? How can you show your love for her now (*speaking to child whose mother is dead — or father, or other loved one*)? How can you help your mother now? *Thus refer to different cases mentioned, in this concrete manner.* When do you pray for her?

Who wants you to pray for your mother, father, brother, sister, friends, all the souls in purgatory? What does God do for them every time you pray for them? What can you do for all your friends

and relatives that are dead? What can you do for all the souls in purgatory? What will God do for them every time you pray for them? Where are you helping the souls to go when you pray for them? What will they do for you when they go to heaven? Why do you pray to the saints? What do they do for you? Why do the saints pray for you? Why do they love you? Whose children are we all? Why do you pray for the souls in purgatory?

How are we united with the saints and with the souls in purgatory? Who united us in one big family? Who taught us to love one another? Why did God want us all to pray for one another? This union of love with the saints and the souls in purgatory is the Communion of Saints mentioned in the Apostles' Creed. When we say, "I believe . . . in the Communion of Saints," it means we believe that the saints in heaven pray for us and we believe that we can help the souls in purgatory by praying for them. Who taught the Apostles the Communion of Saints? What Church teaches us all that the Apostles taught? Now if some one asked you what the Communion of Saints means, what would you say?

What else can you do for the poor souls besides

praying for them? What is the best thing that can be done for the poor souls? Who says Mass for the souls in purgatory? Why do people have Masses said for their dead? What does the priest do at funerals? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears at funeral Masses? What is the color of the vestments at all Masses for the dead? On what day in the year does the priest always wear black vestments?

You know the priest blesses the body at funerals. He sprinkles it with holy water, burns incense around it, and prays over it, asking God to bless it. For we know that on the last day we shall have our bodies again and we shall have them forever after that. Then, too, the priest blesses the grave in which our body will rest until the end of the world. Our body belongs to God and so it is something holy. What is better than flowers for dead people? Why are prayers and Masses better than flowers? What is a Requiem Mass? Of what are the black vestments a sign?

Why do you think they have burning candles around the coffin? These pure lights are a sign of our faith and our love for God. They are also a sign of our hope that our body will rise again at the end of the world. On the gravestones we

carve R. I. P., which means: Rest in peace. What do you do when you visit the cemetery? For whom do you pray? *Here they may mention the graves of their own dead.*

You remember how the early Christians used to bury their dead in the catacombs. These were long underground passages dug out of soft stone. They made places in the sides of these like shelves in a wall. Here they would seal up the bodies with a stone slab or bricks. On the stone they would often write "rest in peace," or "rest with God," or some other little prayer. Many of these carved writings can still be seen in the catacombs at Rome. Then, too, in the catacombs they came together to worship God. The priests and bishops said Mass on the tombs of the martyrs.

Why do you think the bishop consecrates the cemetery? Why does he want to make it holy ground? What will take place there at the end of the world? How long will you pray for your dear ones that are dead? Why does it make you happy to pray for them? When will they be able to show their love for you again?

Why do you think the souls in purgatory love God very much? Where are they sure they will be? What do you think they desire most?

When will there be no more purgatory? Where will the souls in purgatory be at the end of the world? Why did God give us purgatory? What would happen to many people if there were no purgatory? How does purgatory show God's love for us? How can you help to free souls from purgatory? Why does God want you to pray for the poor souls? What does it show when you pray for them? Who wants us all to love one another?

When is the feast of All Souls? For whom is Mass said on the feast of All Souls? For whom do you pray more than ever on that day? Which is the month of the poor souls? Why is November called the month of the poor souls? For whom do people have many Masses said during that month? For whom do many good people say the Rosary every day of November? Why do many people go to Mass every morning during November?

Why does the priest always pray for the souls in purgatory when he says Mass? Why do we love the souls in purgatory? Why does God love them? In many places they say the De Profundis every evening. The De Profundis is one of the Psalms in the Bible (Ps. 129). *Read it to the children.* In those places the church bell

is rung and then the people say this Psalm for the souls in purgatory.

Now, how do the people on earth, the souls in purgatory, and the saints in heaven show their love for one another? What is meant by the Communion of Saints? For whom can you pray in purgatory? What can you do for your grandparents? How can you show your love for those who are dead? Of course we do not know who is in purgatory. Nor do we know when our dear ones go from purgatory. Perhaps they are in heaven praying for us when we are praying for them, thinking that they are in purgatory. But in this case God will accept our prayers for other poor souls. So we keep on praying for our friends and relatives that are dead.

What is a great consolation for us when some one dear to us dies? Why is it a consolation to be able to pray for him? How do we know that we can help the dead by our prayers? What Church teaches us to pray for the dead? God also wrote in the Bible that it is a holy work to pray for the dead. In the second Book of Machabees (Ch. 12) you can read the story of the brave Judas Machabeus who sent money to the temple to have prayers said for the dead. Why do people sometimes offer money for Masses? For

whom can they have Masses said? Of course you know they do not pay for the Mass. It would be a great sin to try to buy or sell the Mass. Good people make offerings to the priest who says Mass to help support him.

Now, who go to purgatory when they die? What kind of sin sends people to purgatory? What happens if people don't do enough penance for their sins before they die? Only what kind of souls can go to heaven? Where are souls made pure for heaven? Why did God give us purgatory? How does purgatory show God's love for us? What can we do for the souls in purgatory? What will they do for us when they go to heaven? How long will they be thankful to us if we pray for them?

Test Questions

1. Where do those go who die in venial sin? 2. When will there be no purgatory? 3. Where do those go who die before they have done enough penance for their sins? 4. What do the souls in purgatory suffer? 5. How do we help the souls in purgatory? 6. What can we offer for the souls in purgatory? 7. Why did God give us purgatory? 8. How are we united in the Communion of Saints?

CHAPTER XXVIII

The Resurrection

After our Lord's death His soul went to limbo. At the same time His body lay sealed in a tomb guarded by a band of Roman soldiers. On the morning of the third day the stone suddenly rolled back from the mouth of the sepulcher and Christ came forth alive. For forty days He remained on earth after His resurrection, appearing to many, talking often with His Apostles. Our Lord arose from the dead by His own divine power. It is by this same power that we shall all rise from the dead on the last day.

Children, you spoke the last time about purgatory and death. Perhaps you would like to speak about some of those interesting things today. Tell me what you think about death. What does it mean for those who love and serve God all their lives? What is your idea of a happy death? For whom is death terrible? What awaits the sinner at death? Why do you think we should prepare for death every day of our life? When might we die? What will happen to those who die in mortal sin? What will they suffer in hell? How long will they suffer in hell? What will happen to those who die in venial

sin? What others go to purgatory? Where do people go when they are freed from purgatory? How can you show your love for those who are dead? How do you know that your prayers will help the souls in purgatory? What Church teaches you that? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach you? Why does the Catholic Church always teach the truth? To whom are you going when you die? Where will you be united with all your loved ones? When are you going to your real home?

Where did our Lord die? How did our Lord die? Who stood by the cross when our Lord was dying? To whom did our Lord give His blessed mother then? Who was there when they took our Lord down from the cross? What does the Thirteenth Station of the Cross show? What does the Fourteenth Station show? You know a good man named Joseph from the town of Arimathea had a new tomb cut out of the solid rock. He went to Pilate and asked him to let him take our Lord's body and bury it there. Pilate gave him permission to take the body, but they wanted to be sure that our Lord was really dead. So a soldier pierced our Lord's side with a spear. You can read about this in the Gospels.

Where, now, did they bury our Lord's body?

Why did they put a big stone at the entrance of the tomb and seal it? Whom did they place there to guard the tomb? Why did they have soldiers guard the tomb? What happened on the morning of the third day? How could our Lord come out of the tomb? What did the soldiers do when they saw our Lord coming out of the tomb? Why did the Jewish high priests offer money to the soldiers?

Mary Magdalen was the first to see our Lord after He arose from the dead. She had been a sinner, but our Lord forgave her her sins. After that she loved God very much and was very good. After she saw our Lord she ran to tell the Apostles. Then St. Peter and St. John came hurrying to the tomb. Why did our Lord forgive Mary Magdalen's sins? For what was she sorry? To whom did Mary Magdalen go after she had seen our Lord? Which two Apostles came running to the tomb? St. John ran faster than St. Peter and arrived there first. No doubt he could run faster because he was younger than St. Peter. He was the youngest of the Apostles. You can read about this in St. John's Gospel.

What would you have done if you had been in Jerusalem when our Lord was buried? Why would you like to go to Jerusalem now? There is

a beautiful church built over our Lord's tomb. Jerusalem is a city of about forty thousand inhabitants. It is called the Holy City because our Lord suffered and died there. Pilate lived in Jerusalem when our Lord died. He was the Roman Governor at that time. Palestine was then under the power of the Roman Empire.

How do you think the Apostles felt when our Lord appeared to them alive? Why do you think they knelt before Him? Why were they so happy to see our Lord again? You know they were in a room with the doors locked. But our Lord passed through without opening the door. His body was then glorified and He could pass from place to place as our thoughts travel. One of the Apostles, St. Thomas, was absent when our Lord came the first time. When the other Apostles told him that our Lord had been there, he did not want to believe them. So when our Lord came again, a few days later, He called St. Thomas and told him to put his finger in the place where the nails had been and his hand in His side where the spear had pierced.

Now, how did our Lord enter the room in which the Apostles were? How was our Lord's body changed after He arose from the dead? When will our body be glorified? How quickly can a

glorified body move? Which Apostle was absent when our Lord came the first time? What did our Lord say to St. Thomas when He came again?

Where can you read how our Lord came back to life? To what part of the Bible do the Gospels belong? Who wrote the Bible? How did God write the Bible? What Church teaches us about the Bible? How did the Bible come down to us through 1900 years? What Church watches over the Bible? What Church keeps people from changing the words of the Bible? How do you know about our Lord's life? What Church teaches you what to believe about our Lord? What do you say about our Lord's resurrection in the Apostles' Creed? *Have them say it.* From whom did the Apostles' Creed come down to us?

On what day did our Lord rise from the dead? When does Easter Sunday come? What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on Easter Sunday? What does white signify? In some countries it is the custom to have Easter eggs. No doubt these eggs signify that as the little chick comes alive from the egg so our Lord came alive from the tomb. In Catholic countries the priest blesses eatables for Easter. The people bring meat, bread, butter, eggs, vegetables, and the like, and the priest blesses them with beautiful

prayers. Thus they have blessed food for the great feast of Easter. Now what is the meaning of Easter eggs? What does the priest bless in Catholic countries for Easter?

The priest blesses water for Baptism on Easter Saturday. The prayers which the priest sings and says when he blesses baptismal water are very beautiful. The priest also blesses Easter water on Holy Saturday. On that day the people take this holy water to their homes. Why do good people always try to have holy water in their homes? When do you bless yourself with holy water? When does the priest sprinkle the people with holy water?

What is the week before Easter called? What is Thursday of Holy Week called? Why is it called Holy Thursday? What took pl ce on the Thursday night before our Lord died? Why do good people always try to go to Holy Communion on Holy Thursday? Why is the Blessed Sacrament exposed all day on Holy Thursday? Why do they have a procession of the Blessed Sacrament on that day?

What is Friday of Holy Week called? Why is it called Good Friday? What did our Lord do for us on the first Good Friday? What do good people like to do on Good Friday? Why

do you like to make the Stations of the Cross? What do many people do from twelve to three on Good Friday? What are these three hours called?

When is Palm Sunday? What does the priest bless on Palm Sunday? Of what does the blessed palm remind us? One week before our Lord was crucified He came riding into Jerusalem on an ass. The people came in great crowds to meet Him. They were singing hosannas and carrying palm branches in their hands to do Him honor. They even spread their garments in the road for Him to pass over. This is called our Lord's triumphal entrance into Jerusalem. You can read about it in the Gospels.

On Palm Sunday the priest reads the Passion at Mass. The Passion is taken from the Gospels; it is an account of our Lord's suffering and death. Why, then, does the priest bless palm on Palm Sunday? How did the crowds come out to meet our Lord as He came riding into Jerusalem? What is the Passion which the priest reads at Mass on Palm Sunday? Where can you read the Passion of our Lord?

What are the forty days before Easter called? What is the first day of Lent called? What does the priest bless on Ash Wednesday? Why does the priest put blessed ashes on your forehead?

What do good people do during Lent? Why do they fast and abstain from meat? Why do they do penance? Why do you like to say the Stations of the Cross during Lent? How does it make you think of our Lord's sufferings? Why do you always try to go to Mass and attend devotions during Lent?

What does it mean to make your Easter duty? It means to go to Holy Communion during the Easter time. You know there is a Commandment of the Church which says that all must go to Holy Communion during Easter time. Of course many good people go to Holy Communion every day. It would be a mortal sin to neglect Holy Communion during Easter time. Easter time is the period from Palm Sunday to Pentecost, but sometimes the bishop extends it further. What sin would anybody commit if he neglected Holy Communion during Easter time? Why do you try to go to Holy Communion as often as you can? When is the Easter time? What Commandment does the Church give for the Easter time?

Why is Easter such a great feast in the Church? What did our Lord show when He arose from the dead? By what power did our Lord rise from the dead? Can you tell me of any people whom our Lord brought back to life? How did our

Lord bring Lazarus back to life? What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? Why was our Lord able to rise from the dead? How long has our Lord been God? How long will our Lord be God? What can God do? Why was our Lord able to bring Lazarus back to life? Who can bring people back to life? Who gives us all life?

You know the saints sometimes raised dead people to life. They did this by the power of God. In the Acts of the Apostles you can read how St. Paul raised several dead people to life. St. Luke wrote the Acts of the Apostles.

By whose power did St. Paul raise the dead to life? By whose power did the saints sometimes bring people back to life? When will our bodies come back to life again? Who will bring us all back to life on the last day? How will our bodies be changed after they rise from the dead? Why do you say in the Apostles' Creed? — "I believe in the . . . resurrection of the body." What do you mean when you say that you believe in the resurrection of the body? How long will we have our bodies in heaven? What will God do for our bodies in heaven? Why will He make our bodies young and beautiful in heaven? What will God give us for our bodies in heaven? What will He give us for our eyes, our ears, and our taste?

How quickly will our bodies be able to move in heaven? Where is our Lord's body now? Where is the Blessed Virgin's body? On what day did our Lord take His blessed mother's body to heaven? When is the feast of the Assumption? Why are all bound to hear Mass on August 15th? What will the bodies of the wicked suffer in hell? What do you think they will look like?

Who will keep your body always young and strong and beautiful in heaven? Why will there be no sickness or death in heaven? When shall we see our Lord's body? How do you think our Lord's body will look in heaven? On what day did our Lord rise from the dead? On what day did our Lord die? What was the second day after our Lord's death? What was the third day after our Lord's death? Why is Easter a time of joy for us? What does our Lord's resurrection show? How does it show that He is really God?

TEST QUESTIONS

1. How did the Jews know that our Lord would come back to life? 2. Why did they place soldiers at our Lord's tomb? 3. Where was our Lord's soul while His body was in the tomb? 4. When did our Lord come back to life? 5. By whose power did our Lord come back to life? 6. How long did our Lord stay on earth after He arose from the dead? 7. To whom did our Lord appear during these forty days? 8. When shall we all rise from the dead?

CHAPTER XXIX

Christ Founded the Catholic Church

Forty days after our Lord rose from the dead, He ascended into heaven. Ten days later He sent the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles. Christ founded the Catholic Church to teach all the nations of the world. The Holy Ghost will stay with the Catholic Church until the end of the world to guard it in the truth and to help it teach the people to love and serve God. Our Lord wants all the people in the world to belong to the Catholic Church because it is the only Church that He founded. God sent the Catholic Church to lead people to heaven. God will watch over it until the end of the world.

Perhaps you would like to talk again, children, about our Lord's resurrection. Tell me all that happened on the third day after our Lord's death. Tell me how our Lord appeared to the Apostles. Tell me about St. Thomas. What do you think our Lord told the Apostles after He arose from the dead? Whom did He want them to teach? What does our Lord's resurrection show about our Lord? Why was He able to come back to life? What can our Lord do?

Why can our Lord do all things? Which person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? By what

power did our Lord rise from the dead? What shows best that our Lord was really God? What shows that our Lord was man, too? Why could our Lord die? Where was our Lord's soul while His body was in the tomb? Who were in limbo? Why did the just have to wait in limbo? What did our Lord do for them and for us when He died? Tell me about Easter; Holy Week; Holy Thursday; Good Friday; Holy Saturday.

How long did our Lord stay on earth after He arose from the dead? What did He do after forty days? Our Lord ascended to heaven from Mount Olivet. There were about five hundred people present when He went up to heaven. Mount Olivet is just a little distance from Jerusalem. Our Lord used to go there often to pray. Sometimes He would spend the whole night in prayer on the mountain.

What is the day called on which our Lord ascended into heaven? How many days after Easter is Ascension Day? You know it always falls on Thursday. Why do all have to go to Mass on the feast of the Ascension? How many Holy Days are there in the year? Name them. What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on Ascension Day? What do the white vestments signify? What did our Lord

promise before He went up to heaven? Why did He promise to send the Holy Ghost? What did the Apostles do after they came down from Mount Olivet? Why did they lock themselves in a room? How long did they stay locked in the room? What were they doing during those nine days?

What is the novena to the Holy Ghost? Why do you like to pray to the Holy Ghost? Why is God the Holy Ghost called the Spirit of Truth? When do you make the novena to the Holy Ghost?

What happened on the tenth day after our Lord went up to heaven? What noise did the Apostles hear? What form did the Holy Ghost take? How could the Holy Ghost take the form of tongues? Where did the tongues stand? What can the Holy Ghost do? Why can the Holy Ghost do all things? How long has the Holy Ghost been God?

What did the Apostles do after the Holy Ghost came upon them? Why did they have such great courage after that? What were they willing to do after that? In what Sacrament do you receive the Holy Ghost? Who gives you the Sacrament of Confirmation? Who gives you courage and strength in your faith? What Sacra-

ment makes you ready to suffer for God if need be?

When did the Holy Ghost come upon the Apostles? What is that day called? How many days after Easter is Pentecost? Pentecost is also called Whitsunday. In the early Church they used to baptize the converts on the Saturday before Pentecost. Of course they baptized most of them on Holy Saturday. When they were baptized they were clothed in white garments. So the next day many of them wore white. That is why Pentecost is sometimes called Whitsunday or white Sunday. What would you say now if some one asked you why Pentecost is called Whitsunday? On what day were most of the converts baptized in the early Church? When were those baptized who were left over from Holy Saturday?

The priest wears red vestments on Pentecost. Red is the sign of love. You know the Holy Ghost is the Spirit of Love. Out of love for us the Holy Ghost comes to us to make us holy. Red is also the sign of martyrdom; it represents the blood of the martyrs. That is why the priest also wears red vestments on the feasts of martyrs. Why does the priest wear red vestments on the feasts of the Apostles? How many of the Apostles were martyrs? Of what else is red the

sign besides the blood of martyrs? What does red signify on the feast of the Holy Ghost?

Why did the Holy Ghost come upon the Apostles? What work did our Lord give the Apostles to do? Who were they to teach? Why did our Lord found the Catholic Church? What does the Catholic Church teach us? How do we know all that our Lord taught? What Church teaches us all that the Apostles taught? What Church teaches us all that God told the patriarchs and prophets? How do we know what the words of the Bible mean? What Church has always guarded the Bible for us? Why did God give us the Catholic Church? How do we know all that God wants us to do? What Church teaches us all that God wants us to know? What Church teaches us to love God? What Church leads us to heaven?

Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? Which person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why does the Holy Ghost guard the truth in the Catholic Church? How long will the Holy Ghost guard the truth in the Catholic Church? When did the Holy Ghost come upon the Catholic Church? Why are you happy to

believe all that the Catholic Church teaches? Who started the Catholic Church? On what day did the Catholic Church really begin? Why do you say that the Catholic Church really began on that first Pentecost? What did the Apostles do as soon as the Holy Ghost came upon them?

You can read about this in the Acts of the Apostles, Ch. 2. There it tells how St. Peter preached to a great multitude of people from many nations. Many of them believed in our Lord when they heard the words of St. Peter. About three thousand of them were baptized. So that was really the beginning of the Catholic Church. Now, if some one asked you on what day the Catholic Church began, what would you say? Where can you read about how the Holy Ghost came and how St. Peter preached to the people? In what part of the Bible are the Acts of the Apostles?

Who keeps the truth in the Catholic Church? Why is the Holy Ghost called the Spirit of Truth? From whom does the truth come? Whose truth does the Catholic Church teach us? Why is the Catholic Church always able to teach us God's truth? What Church gives us God's grace? What is God's grace to our soul? What can we do when we have this new life in our soul? Why

do we need God's grace? What Church gives us God's seven Sacraments? Who gave the seven Sacraments to the Catholic Church? What comes to us through the seven Sacraments? What makes our soul beautiful before God?

How long will the Catholic Church last? Who will guard the Catholic Church until the end of the world? Who will keep the truth in the Catholic Church until the end of the world? Who helps the Catholic Church teach people to love God? Why does the Holy Ghost help us save our souls? Why is the Holy Ghost called the Spirit of Love? You know the pagans tried to destroy the Catholic Church in the beginning. They killed thousands and thousands of those who believed in it. But they could not destroy it because God watches over His Church. Since then many others have tried to destroy the Catholic Church, but they have always failed.

Over three hundred and fifty years ago a priest named Luther fell away from the Catholic Church and started a sect called Protestants. Since then about three hundred Protestant sects have been started. But God watches over the Catholic Church and will do so until the end of the world. How, then, do you know that the Catholic Church will last to the end of the world?

How do you know that the Catholic Church will teach God's truth until the end of the world? Why does God want all the people to belong to the Catholic Church? Whom do you obey when you do what the Catholic Church teaches?

Why has the Catholic Church always taught the same truth? How long has the Holy Ghost guided the Catholic Church? In how many parts of the world is the Catholic Church? Why is the Catholic Church the same in all parts of the world? Who keeps the Catholic Church as it was in the beginning? Why has the Catholic Church been the same for nineteen hundred years? How long will the Catholic Church teach the truth which it teaches now?

Why is the Catholic Church holy? Who is the founder of the Catholic Church? What kind of truth does the Catholic Church teach? How long has the Catholic Church taught God's truth? What makes many people holy in the Catholic Church? To what Church did all the saints and martyrs belong? Tell me some of the saints whom you know.

To what Church did God give the Sacrifice of the Mass? What Church teaches us the Ten Commandments? How do we know about purgatory? How long have people been saying the

Apostles' Creed in the Catholic Church? What Church came down from the Apostles? Why did our Lord establish but one Church? Whose Church is the Catholic Church? What Church teaches us to believe in the Communion of Saints? What does the Communion of Saints mean? Why do you say in the Apostles' Creed?—"I believe in . . . the Catholic Church." In what Church do we have to believe to be saved? Who tells us to believe in the Catholic Church? Where can we learn God's truth?

Many good people do not believe in the Catholic Church because they do not know that it is God's Church. False teachers sometimes make people hate the Catholic Church. They tell falsehoods about the Catholic Church just as they did about our Lord. The devil hates the Catholic Church because it teaches the people to love God whom he hates. Why do you love the Catholic Church? Who gave us the Catholic Church? How does the Catholic Church show that God loves us? Why did God give us the Catholic Church? Why does God want the Catholic Church to lead us to heaven? Whom do you obey when you obey the Catholic Church? Why do you obey God when you obey the Catholic Church? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

What does it mean to have the Catholic Faith? What Faith have those who believe in the Catholic Church? Why is our Faith holy? From whom does our Faith come? Why do you love your Faith? How much did the martyrs love our holy Faith? What Faith did the Apostles preach? What Faith does the Holy Ghost guard? How long will the Catholic Faith last?

When did you become members of the Catholic Church? When were you baptized? Who baptized you? Whose children did you become when you were baptized? Why do we say that we are born again in Baptism? What life did you receive in Baptism?

How does the Catholic Church teach us to live together? Why does the Catholic Church teach us to love one another? Who first taught us to love one another? What Church teaches us that we are all like brothers and sisters? What Church teaches us that we are like one big family? What food does the Catholic Church give us for our soul? What is the food of the Holy Eucharist? The altar rail is like the family table at which we all come together to nourish our souls with our Lord's body and blood. The Holy Eucharist unites all the members of the Church in love.

Now, what unites all the members of the Church in love? Who teaches us to love one another? Which is the Sacrament of love? To what Church did God give the Holy Eucharist?

In what Church does our Lord dwell? Where is God's house? In what part of the church is the Blessed Sacrament? What does the little red light in the church mean? In what church do you find the crucifix and pictures and statues of our Lord and the saints?

Test Questions

1. When did our Lord ascend into heaven? 2. Who founded the Catholic Church? 3. How long will the Catholic Church last? 4. What Church gives us the seven Sacraments? 5. What Church teaches us all that Christ taught? 6. Why did the Holy Ghost come? 7. How long will the Holy Ghost remain with the Catholic Church? 8. Whose Church is the Catholic Church?

CHAPTER XXX

The Catholic Church

Christ made the Apostles the first priests and bishops of His Church. He Himself taught them the Gospels and the Christian life. He gave them His own divine power so that they could bring His grace to the people. Christ Himself is the head of the Catholic Church. But the Pope rules the Church for Him and so he is the earthly head of the Church. St. Peter was the chief of the Apostles and thus the first Pope of the Catholic Church.

Perhaps you would like to talk again about the Catholic Church, children. Tell me how the Holy Ghost came down upon the Apostles. Tell me all that you know about the Catholic Church. Who established the Catholic Church? On what day did the Catholic Church really begin? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? Who sent the Holy Ghost to stay with the Catholic Church? How long will the Catholic Church teach the truth? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church will last until the end of the world?

At the end of St. Matthew's Gospel you can read what our Lord said to the Apostles after His

resurrection. He told them to go to preach the Gospel to all the nations of the earth and to baptize the people in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Then He promised to watch over them until the end of the world. How, then, do you know that the Catholic Church will last until the end of the world? How do you know that no one can ever destroy the Catholic Church? Who tried to destroy the Catholic Church in the beginning? In the Gospel of St. Matthew, Ch. 16, 18, you can read how our Lord promised to save the Catholic Church from all its enemies. He said the gates of hell should never prevail against it.

Why should all belong to the Catholic Church? For whom did our Lord establish the Catholic Church? What can you do for those who do not belong to the Catholic Church? Why will you pray for them? What Church unites us all in love? What Sacrament gives us all food for our souls? How many members of the Church receive the same Sacraments? Where does the Catholic Church teach the same doctrines? How long has the Catholic Church taught the same holy doctrines? How long will it teach them?

Who teaches us the doctrines of the Catholic Church? Who sent the priest to teach us? Who

baptized you when you were a little baby? Who gave you the Sacrament of Penance? What did the priest do for you when he gave you the Sacrament of Penance?

What does the priest do for people who are very sick? What Sacrament does he give them when they are in danger of death? What does the priest do when he says Mass? Who gave him power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood?

Who gives you Holy Communion? What does the priest give you when you receive Holy Communion? Why do you call the priest "Father"? What does he do for your soul? Why do good men and boys lift the hat when they meet the priest? In whose name does the priest teach you? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? Who ordained the Apostles priests? What powers did our Lord give the Apostles when He made them priests? What did He send them to teach? How many Sacraments did He give them? What did the Apostles do for those who wanted to become Christians? Who baptized babies then?

Who said Mass for the people after our Lord went up to heaven? Who forgave them their sins then? What Sacrament did the Apostles

give when they forgave sins? When the people went to Mass to the Apostles who gave them Holy Communion? What did the Apostles do for people who were very sick? Who confirmed people at that time? Why could the Apostles give the Sacrament of Confirmation? Who gives the Sacrament of Confirmation now? Who were the first bishops of the Catholic Church? Who ordained other priests after our Lord went to heaven? What Sacrament did the Apostles give when they ordained priests? Who gives the Sacrament of Holy Orders now?

In how many parts of the world are there priests now? Yes; there are priests in all parts of the world, for the Catholic Church is spread throughout the whole world. There are about three hundred millions of Catholics in the world now. Why are there priests in all parts of the world? About how many Catholics are there in the world? What do the priests do for the people? In whose name do the priests teach us? Who ordained the first priests of the Catholic Church? In whose name did the Apostles teach? Who gave the Apostles power to say Mass? Who gave them power to forgive sins? You can read in St. John's Gospel, Ch. 20, 23, how our Lord gave the Apostles power to forgive sins. He said to them: "Whose

sins you shall forgive they are forgiven them and whose sins you shall retain they are retained."

Where do the priests now receive power to forgive sins? Who gives them power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? What Church did our Lord establish? Why did our Lord establish but one Church? Whom does our Lord want the Catholic Church to teach? How long will the Catholic Church teach the people? Whose Church is the Catholic Church? In whose name does the Catholic Church teach us? Who gave the Catholic Church power to teach in our Lord's name?

Who is the real head of the Catholic Church? Why do you say that our Lord is the head of the Catholic Church? Why are all the members of the Catholic Church like one family? Who united them all in love? How long has our Lord been head of the Catholic Church? How does our Lord want us to live together? Why does He want us to love one another? Whose children are we all? How long will our Lord be head of the Catholic Church? Who first taught what the Catholic Church teaches us? What did our Lord send the Catholic Church to teach? Who taught the first priests of the Catholic Church?

Who gave the seven Sacraments to the Catholic

Church? Why did our Lord give the Sacraments to the care of the Catholic Church? What do the Sacraments bring to us? When did our Lord gain God's grace for us? How many people does our Lord want to belong to His Church? What Church is our Lord's Church?

Whom did our Lord send to guard the truth in His Church? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? How do you know that the Catholic Church will last to the end of the world? Who has promised to take care of the Catholic Church? Where can you read our Lord's promise to take care of the Church? (St. Matt., Ch. 18.)

Why are you sure that our Lord can take care of the Catholic Church? What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? What can our Lord do? Whom did our Lord place over the Catholic Church in the beginning? What did our Lord tell the Apostles to do? How did the Apostles know what to teach?

In the Gospels, St. Matt. 10; St. Mark 3; St. Luke 6, you can read the names of the Apostles. St. Matthew says: "And the names of the twelve Apostles are these: The first, Simon who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother. James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, Philip and

Bartholomew, Thomas and Matthew the publican, and James the son of Alpheus, and Thaddeus, Simon the Cananæan, and Judas Iscariot who also betrayed Him." St. Peter's name was Simon but our Lord gave him the name of Peter. St. Peter is always named first.

Who was the chief of the Apostles? Who made St. Peter the chief of the Apostles? Why did the other Apostles obey St. Peter? Who gave St. Peter power to rule the Catholic Church? For whom did St. Peter rule the Catholic Church? At first St. Peter was bishop of Antioch in Asia. After remaining there some years, he went to Rome, where he was bishop. Of course he ruled the whole Church while he was bishop of Antioch and while he was bishop of Rome. Who was the first Pope of the Catholic Church? Who made St. Peter Pope? What did our Lord tell St. Peter to rule? Where was St. Peter bishop at first? Where was he bishop after that?

How long did St. Peter rule the whole Catholic Church? Who obeyed St. Peter? Who ordained other priests and bishops? Whom did those other bishops and priests obey? How many of the priests and bishops obeyed St. Peter? Where did St. Peter die? How was he put to death? Why did he ask to be crucified with his head

down? What beautiful church is built on the spot where St. Peter died? What emperor first built St. Peter's church? At what time did Constantine the Great live? Who was the first Christian emperor of Rome?

Where did St. Paul die? How did they put St. Paul to death? When is the feast of Sts. Peter and Paul? (June 29th.) What is the color of the vestments which the priest wears on that day? Why does he wear red vestments? How many of the Apostles were martyrs?

Can you name some of the Popes who ruled the Church after St. Peter died? When did St. Linus rule the Catholic Church? For whom did St. Linus rule the Church? When did Pope St. Cletus rule the Catholic Church? Who gave St. Cletus power to rule the Church? When did St. Clement rule the Catholic Church? In whose name did St. Clement rule the Catholic Church? St. Clement lived about a hundred years after our Lord was born. He had a house in Rome which he made into a church. The old church of St. Clement is beneath the new church which was built about seven hundred years ago.

Who tried to destroy the Catholic Church in the beginning? What did the pagans do to destroy the Church? Why did they put many

priests and bishops to death? They put many people to death for the Faith. There were four Popes in the first hundred years; there were eleven in the second; and there were fifteen in the third. Nearly all of these were martyrs; they were put to death for our holy Faith. How many Popes were there in the first century? How many in the second; the third? How many of these were martyrs?

The most cruel of the pagan emperors was Nero. It was he who put St. Peter and St. Paul to death. He had thousands of Christians thrown to wild beasts. He also bound them on high poles, covered them with tar and oil, and set them on fire in the night. Now, who was the most cruel of the pagan emperors? How did Nero put the Christians to death? Where were the martyrs buried at Rome? Where did the Christians have Mass in those days? Where are the catacombs? Who rules the Church for our Lord now? Where does the Pope live? Of what place is the Pope bishop? Why is the Bishop of Rome always Pope? Who was the first Pope to live at Rome? Where did St. Linus, St. Cletus, and St. Clement live? Why is the Church sometimes called Roman Catholic?

Of course you know our Lord's Church is

properly called the Catholic Church. Catholic means general or universal. The Church is called Catholic because it is spread throughout the whole world and exists at all times. It is sometimes called Roman Catholic because the Pope lives at Rome. Now, what would you say if some one asked you why our Lord's Church is called Catholic? Why is it also proper to call it the Roman Catholic Church? Where does the earthly head of the Church live? What is the Pope's house called? Why do we call the Pope our Holy Father? For how many of us does he labor? Who are the Pope's spiritual children?

Why do you love to pray for our Holy Father? Who watches over the whole Church? Why does our Holy Father need much of God's help? Why do so many good people pray for our Holy Father every day? What will God do for our Holy Father when you pray for him? How often do you think priests pray for our Holy Father? What great cares does our Holy Father have? Whom does our Holy Father help? What does he do for the poor? What does he do when there is any great trouble in the world? Who is Pope now? Who names all the bishops in the world? Whom do all the bishops in the world obey? In how many parts of the world are there bishops?

You know the cardinals help the Pope to rule the Church. Next to the Pope the cardinals have the highest dignity in the Church. The Pope is always chosen from among the cardinals. When a Pope dies a cardinal is always chosen to be Pope. There are archbishops in all parts of the world, too. The archbishop does not rule the bishops under him, but he often gives them advice. Now, who are next in dignity to the Pope? What do the cardinals do for the Pope? Who is always chosen Pope when a Pope dies?

Bishops and archbishops rule a part of the Church called a diocese. The priests of a diocese obey their bishop. The bishop sends them to take care of the people and makes laws for them. The diocese is divided into parishes. The priest in charge of a parish is called a pastor. The priests who help him are called assistants or curates. Now, what part of the Church do bishops rule? Into what parts are dioceses divided? Who makes laws for the diocese? Whom do the priests obey? Who have charge of parishes? What are the priests called who help pastors?

Who makes laws for the whole Church? Who gave the Pope power to make laws for the whole Church? Who guards the teaching of the whole

Church? Which person of the Blessed Trinity guides the Pope in his teaching? Why are you sure that the Pope always teaches the truth to the whole Church? How long will the Holy Ghost remain with the Catholic Church? Who tells the bishops how to rule their dioceses? To whom do the bishops have to give an account of their diocese? Every bishop has to go to Rome every few years to tell the Pope about the work in his diocese. The American bishops go every five years. Why do the bishops have to go to Rome? Why do they have to tell the Pope about their diocese? How many bishops obey the Pope? Who obey the bishops in a diocese? Who obey the priests in parishes?

Whom does the Pope obey? To whom does he have to give an account of the whole Church? When will the Pope have to give an account to God of the whole Church? Why, then, do you pray for the Pope?

TEST QUESTIONS

1. Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? 2. What did the Apostles do for the people? 3. Who ordained the Apostles priests and bishops? 4. Whom did the Apostles ordain before they died? 5. Who is the head of the Catholic Church? 6. What does the Pope do for our Lord? 7. Who was the first Pope of the Catholic Church? 8. Why does the Holy Ghost guide the Pope?

CHAPTER XXXI

Divine Grace

God is the author of life; all life comes from Him. By our natural life we can live for this world alone. But God gives a new life to our soul by which we can gain heaven. It is the life of divine grace. By grace we can love God and thus save our soul. Grace makes our soul holy and beautiful and pure so that God can love us. God's grace comes to us through the Sacraments. God also gives us grace when we pray. Our Lord, when He died on the cross, gained for us the grace that Adam and Eve lost by their sin. Mortal sin alone can take God's grace from the soul. The Catholic Church brings the grace which Christ gained for us.

Children, perhaps you would like to talk again about the Catholic Church. Tell me how it started. Tell me how the Holy Ghost came to it. Tell me about the Apostles; the first Pope; our Holy Father. Why did our Lord establish the Catholic Church? What does it teach us? How do we know all that our Lord and the Apostles taught? What did our Lord do to keep the truth in the Catholic Church? When did the Holy Ghost come upon the Apostles? How long

will the Holy Ghost stay with the Catholic Church? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church will always teach the truth? How long has the Catholic Church taught the truth? What person of the Blessed Trinity stays with the Catholic Church?

Tell me about the Blessed Trinity. Tell me about each person of the Blessed Trinity. How do we know that there are three persons in God? Why did God tell us about Himself? Why does God want us to know Him? What can God do? Tell me some of the things God has done for us. How do the things around you make you think of God? How do we happen to be in this world? Who gave you life? When did God give you your natural life?

What can you do with your natural life? Tell me what you can do with your eyes; your ears; your mouth; your hands; your feet. Now tell me about your soul. What powers have you in your soul? Why are you able to think? By what power can you choose things and wish for things? For what did God make you? Why does God wish to have you in heaven with Him? What do you have to do to get to heaven? What Church teaches you all that God wants you to do?

Why does God give a new life to your soul? What is this new life called? Why do you need God's grace? What do you need to be able to know God? What do you need to be able to serve God? What makes you able to keep the Commandments? Who gives you this grace? What makes you able to avoid sin? What do you need to be able to believe all that the Catholic Church teaches? What gives you power to do good to others? What enables you to love God? What, then, does God's grace make you able to do? What is God's grace in our soul? Why does God give you this new life? How many people need this new life to get to heaven? How does this new life change your soul? What is this new life called? Why does God give you His grace? What makes your soul holy and pure? What makes your soul beautiful?

Why does God make your soul holy and pure and beautiful with His grace? What does God do for your soul so that He can love it? Why must we have God's grace so that God can love our soul? How does grace lift us up to God? What kind of souls are united with God? Why are none other than holy and pure souls united with God? How holy and pure is God? What makes us children of God? What makes us fit

to go to heaven? Why does God's grace make us fit to go to heaven? What makes our soul holy and pure and beautiful?

Why does God give this new life to our soul? What are we able to do when we have this new life of grace? What does it enable us to do for God? What does it make us able to do for others? What does God do for you so that you can love Him? What does God give you so that you can keep the Commandments? What does God do for you so that you can avoid sin? What, then, can you do when you have God's grace?

What is the only thing that can take God's grace from any one's soul? What do people lose when they commit mortal sin? When did Adam and Eve lose God's grace? When did the angels lose God's grace? Where do people go if they die without God's grace? When do we say that anybody's soul is dead? What life does anybody lose when he commits mortal sin?

What does God do for our soul so that He can love it? How does God make our soul holy and pure and beautiful? How does God make us fit to go to heaven? What made the Blessed Virgin Mary so pure and holy? What did the angel say to the Blessed Virgin Mary? Why did he say?—"Hail, Mary, full of grace." Why did God give

the Blessed Virgin so much grace? Whose mother was she to be?

What made St. Joseph so holy and pure? With whom was St. Joseph to live? What did God's grace do for St. Joseph? What did God's grace do for all the saints? What did God's grace do for the Apostles? What made them able to work hard all their life for God? What gave them strength to die for our holy Faith? What made the saints able to fast and pray so much? Why were they able to love God so much? What new life did God give them? Why do we need God's grace?

We need God's grace to get to heaven. We need God's grace to pray, to fast, to do good works. We need God's grace to be able to believe in Him, hope in Him, and love Him. When are you able to pray well? When can we believe in God, hope in Him, and love Him? Why does God give us the new life of grace? How many Sacraments did our Lord give us? What do the seven Sacraments bring to us? Whose grace do the Sacraments bring to us?

Why did our Lord come down from heaven? What did our Lord bring us from heaven? Who brought us God's grace from heaven? When did our Lord free us from sin? When did our Lord

gain God's grace for us? What grace did our Lord gain for us on the cross? How does our Lord send us His grace now? What grace do the Sacraments bring to us? What Church has our Lord's seven Sacraments? What Church brings God's grace to us? How does the Catholic Church bring God's grace to us? In what Church do we receive a new life for our soul? Why do we call the Catholic Church our Holy Mother the Church? Why is the Catholic Church like a mother to us? What life does it bring to us?

How many Sacraments did our Lord give to the care of His Church? In which Sacrament did you first receive God's grace? Why do we say that we are born again in Baptism? When do we receive the new life of grace? When did you receive the Sacrament of Baptism? What other Sacraments have you received? What Sacrament do you receive when you go to Holy Communion? What Sacrament takes away our sins after Baptism? What Sacrament makes you strong in Faith? Name the seven Sacraments.

What Sacrament do people receive when they get married? What Sacrament makes men priests? What Sacrament do people receive when they are very sick? What Church takes care of the Sacraments for our Lord? What do the

Sacraments bring to us? What does God's grace do for our soul? What makes our soul holy and pure? Why do we need God's grace? When are we able to get to heaven? What can we do when we have the life of grace? What unites us with God? How did the saints become holy and pure? Who was full of grace? Why are you happy to have God's grace? When did you first receive God's grace? What Sacrament feeds God's grace in your soul? What is the food of your soul in the Holy Eucharist?

What is the only thing that can take God's grace away from the soul? What Sacrament takes away mortal sin from the soul? Why is the soul said to be dead when it is in mortal sin? What Sacrament gives back the life of grace to the soul? What does the Sacrament of Holy Orders do for men? Why are priests able to do so much for God? What do they receive in the Sacrament of Holy Orders? Why do they need more of God's grace?

When do married people get the grace to love each other until death? When do people receive the Sacrament of Matrimony? When do they get grace to love and care for their children? Tell me about the home of the Holy Family at Nazareth. When do people get the grace to die well?

In what Sacrament do they receive this grace? When do people receive the Sacrament of Extreme Unction?

What, then, do all the Sacraments bring to us? Who gained all this grace for us? When did our Lord gain all this grace for us? Whose children are we all? Why does God give us His grace? Why does He wish to have us with Him forever in heaven? Why does God wish to make our soul holy and pure? When does God love our soul? What does God do for our soul so that He can love it? How does God make our soul pure and holy and beautiful?

How does God help us so that we can love Him? To how many people is God willing to give His grace? What makes us good and holy? How do we have to use God's grace to be pure and holy? What happens when we use God's grace well? When are we good and holy? How often does God give us the grace to be good? What do we have to do, then, to be good? What kind of people are we when we use God's grace well?

When do we use God's grace well? What are we doing when we try always to be as good as we can? How are we using God's grace when we try to be good? What kind of people are those

who will not use God's grace? Why do some people commit sin? What are they doing with God's grace when they commit sin? Who are those who refuse to use God's grace?

What grace does God offer to sinners? Why does God offer them the grace to be sorry for their sins? Why did our Lord give us the Sacrament of Penance? What grace do sinners receive in the Sacrament of Penance? Who gives sinners grace to pray to be sorry for their sins? Why does God give sinners grace to be sorry for their sins? Why does He want them to turn away from their sins? Why does He wish to have them in heaven? When do sinners use the grace that God offers them? What are they using when they go to Confession? What makes them able to be sorry for their sins? Why are they able, then, to do penance for their sins?

With whom are we talking when we pray? What do we ask of God when we pray? Why do we ask God for His grace? For what does prayer prepare our soul? When, then, is our soul prepared to receive God's grace? Why, then, must we pray? Why does God give His grace only to those who pray? Whose souls are prepared to receive God's grace? Of course God offers His grace to all. But He wants us to prepare

our soul for it by prayer. So we must pray to receive God's grace. That is why those alone who pray can get to heaven.

Now, what prepares our soul for God's grace? Why do you pray every day? Why did the saints pray so much? Yes; prayer shows that we are willing to receive the grace that God offers to us. Good works will also help to prepare our souls for God's grace. That is why we fast and abstain and do good to others. Why do you pray so well before Holy Communion? Whose grace do you receive in Holy Communion? What prepares our soul for this grace? Why do you pray before receiving Confirmation? For what are you preparing your soul? What do you do before receiving the Sacrament of Penance? What do you pray for then? Yes; you are getting your soul ready to receive God's grace. Prayer lifts our mind and heart to God. It is just like holding out our hand to receive the most wonderful gift that God gives us.

In what Church do you receive God's grace? Why do you love to pray in the church? What does prayer do for your soul? What do you do when you are at Mass? For what are you preparing your soul during Mass? Why do you like to attend devotions in the church? What do the

people do together at devotions? Why do they pray together? For what does prayer prepare their soul? What devotions do you like best? What devotions are held during Lent? What devotions are held during the month of May? What devotions are held during the month of June? Yes; the devotions to the Sacred Heart of Jesus are very beautiful. They are really devotions to our Lord's love. The Sacred Heart is the sign of our Lord's love. Now, could you tell any one what the devotions to the Sacred Heart mean? Which is the month of the Sacred Heart? Why do many people go to Holy Communion on the first Friday of the month?

What devotions are held during October? Which is the month of the Holy Rosary? What devotions are held during November? Which is the month of the poor souls? What can you do for all the people in the world? When do you ask God to give others His grace? Yes; when you pray for them God offers them more and more of His grace until at last they accept it. You know St. Augustine was not good when he was young. So his mother prayed for him every day for twenty years. At last he accepted God's grace and became a great saint. St. Monica was St. Augustine's mother. Now, what does God do

for others when you pray for them? When does He offer them more and more of His grace? Who was St. Augustine's mother? What did she do for St. Augustine?

How long, then, should you pray for others? How long will God offer them more and more of His grace? Why are you happy when others receive God's grace? When do people love God? Why do you wish that all the people in the world would love God? Why do you wish that all the people would accept God's grace? What would God's grace, then, do for their soul?

Test Questions

1. What is a new life for our soul? 2. What makes us children of God? 3. What does divine grace do for our soul? 4. How does God give us His grace? 5. What is the only thing that can take God's grace away from the soul? 6. Why do we need God's grace? 7. Who was full of grace? 8. When did our Lord gain God's grace for us?

CHAPTER XXXII

The Sacrament of Baptism

Baptism is the Sacrament which takes away original sin from our soul. In adults Baptism also takes away any sins they may have committed. We cannot receive any other Sacrament until we have been baptized. In Baptism we are said to be born again because thereby we receive the life of grace. By Baptism we become children of God, heirs of heaven, and members of the Catholic Church. We can receive Baptism but once. The priest baptizes us, but in case of necessity any one may baptize.

Children, no doubt you would like to talk again about God's grace. What does this new life do for your soul? What makes your soul holy and pure? What makes your soul beautiful to God? Why do you need God's grace? How many people need God's grace to get to heaven? Yes; this new life of grace is wonderful. What can you do when you have God's grace? What enables you to love God? What enables you to keep the Commandments? Why are you able to avoid sin? What enables you to believe all that the Catholic Church teaches?

How does God's grace come to us? How many

Sacraments give God's grace? Why did God give us the seven Sacraments? What do the seven Sacraments bring into our soul? Why does God give us His grace? Why does God wish to have us in heaven?

Tell me about the time when you were a little baby. How long is it since you were born? *Ask them individually.* When did God give you your life? Why did they take you to the church when you were but a few days old? What Sacrament did the priest give you then? What did the Sacrament of Baptism bring into your soul? When did you receive a new life for your soul? What is this new life called? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism?

When did you first receive God's grace? What new life did you receive in Baptism? When did you become a child of God? Whose child did you become when you were baptized? What does God's grace do for your soul? What makes your soul holy and pure? What can you do when you have God's grace? What is God's grace to our soul? What is the only thing that can take away God's grace from the soul?

Why are we all born without God's grace? In what sin were we all born? From whom does original sin come down to us? How many people

are born in the sin of Adam and Eve? Who was the only one that was always free from original sin? Why did God keep the Blessed Virgin free from original sin? Whose mother was she to be? What Sacrament took away original sin from your soul? When did you receive the Sacrament of Baptism? What sin did Baptism take away from your soul? Why, then, do they baptize all little babies? What sin was on your soul before you were baptized? What took original sin away from your soul? Why did you not have God's grace when you were born? When did you first receive God's grace?

When did you become a child of God? What made your soul holy and pure? Why did God give you His grace? What is God's grace called when you receive it? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism?

What Sacrament makes us members of the Catholic Church? When did you become a member of the Catholic Church? Whose Church is the Catholic Church? Who founded the Catholic Church? What is the only Church that Christ started? What made you a member of the Catholic Church?

Which is the first Sacrament that we receive? What Sacrament do we have to receive before

we can receive any other Sacrament? When did you receive a new life for your soul? How long will you be free from original sin? What made you a child of God? How long will you be a child of God? Of course you can receive Baptism but once. For then you are born again in the life of grace. What is the first Sacrament that you need to get to heaven? Where would you have gone if you had died the day after you were baptized? Why cannot little babies go to heaven if they die without baptism? What sin is on their soul?

Why should little babies be baptized soon after they are born? Where could they not go if they died without Baptism? Why, then, do we all have to be baptized? Whose children do we become in Baptism? When does our soul become pure and holy? What makes our soul pure and holy in Baptism?

Who gave the Sacrament of Baptism to the Catholic Church? Why did God give the Sacrament of Baptism to the Catholic Church? What is the only Church that belongs to God? Where did they take you to baptize you when you were a little baby? Who baptized you in the church? Who sent the priest to baptize you? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? Who baptized the people and the little babies after our

Lord went up to heaven? Who told the Apostles to baptize them?

What did the priest pour on your head when he baptized you? Who told the priest to pour water on your head? What did the Apostles do when they baptized people? Who told the Apostles to pour water on their head? In whose name did the priest baptize you? What did the priest say when he poured water on your head? Yes; he said: "I baptize thee in the name of the Father and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." What did the Apostles say when they baptized people?

You know on Holy Saturday and on Saturday before Pentecost the priest blesses water for Baptism. This blessed water is different from ordinary holy water. It is used only for Baptism. When the priest blesses baptismal water he mixes holy oil with it. Now when does the priest bless baptismal water? For what is baptismal water used? What does the priest mix with the baptismal water when he is blessing it? Where did the priest pour the water when he baptized you?

What two people took you to the church to be baptized? Yes; your godfather and godmother took you to receive holy Baptism. Your godmother held you with your head on her right arm.

Then the priest asked what your name was to be, for you received your name when you were baptized. Now, tell me what your godfather and godmother did for you. How did your godmother hold you in her arms? She opened your clothing at the neck and uncovered your head. Your godfather stood on the right side. Then the priest spoke to you and your godfather and godmother answered for you. First he asked you: "What do you seek from the Church of God?" Then your godparents answered: "Faith." Then he asked: "What does faith bring you to?" They then answered: "To life everlasting."

Now, how did your godmother hold you? What did she do to your clothing and to your head? Where did your godfather stand? What was the first thing the priest asked you? What did your godparents answer for you? What did they say when he asked you what does faith bring you to?

After that the priest made the sign of the cross on your forehead and on your breast. Then he read some beautiful prayers over you. Then he blessed salt and put a little bit of it into your mouth. This blessed salt was a sign that you be true to God all your life. Now, tell me when the priest made the sign of the cross. What did

he do after he read prayers over you? Of what was the blessed salt a sign?

After that the priest read other prayers over you and then put the end of the stole on your head. At the same time he said to you: "Enter into the temple of God so that you will be with Christ forever in heaven." Then your godparents recited the Apostles' Creed and the Our Father for you. Now, what did the priest say when he put the end of the stole on your head? *Explain to the children what the stole is. Show them one, or a picture of it.* What prayers did your godparents say for you?

Afterwards the priest took spittle on his finger and touching your ears and your nostrils, asked God to make you love the things that God wants you to love. Then he asked you if you would avoid the devil and all his works and pomps. Your godparents promised for you that you would do it. Now, what did the priest do with spittle? What did he ask you to avoid? What did your godparents promise for you?

Then the priest anointed you on your breast and between your shoulders with holy oil. That is the reason why your godmother opened your clothing at the neck. When the priest anointed you with holy oil it was a sign for you to save

your soul. Where, then, did the priest anoint you with holy oil? Why did your godmother open your clothes at the neck? Of what was the holy oil a sign?

Again, the priest asked you some questions. First he asked: "Do you believe in God the Father Almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?" Your godparents answered for you: "I do believe." Then he asked: "Do you believe in Jesus Christ, His only Son our Lord, who was born and suffered for us?" They answered: "I do believe." Then he asked: "Do you believe in the Holy Ghost, the holy Catholic Church, the Communion of Saints, the forgiveness of sins, the resurrection of the body, and life everlasting?" For the third time, they answered: "I do believe." Then the priest asked you: "Do you wish to be baptized?" Your godparents answered: "I do." Tell me now some of the things the priest asked you. What did he ask you about God the Father? What did your godparents answer? What did he ask you about God the Son? What did your godparents answer? What did he ask you about the Holy Ghost and the Catholic Church? What did your godparents answer? What did the priest then ask you about Baptism? What did your godparents answer?

Then your godmother held you in her arms and your godfather put his hand upon you. Then the priest baptized you. What did the priest do when he baptized you? Where did he pour the water? How did your godmother hold you? What did your godfather do whilst the priest was pouring the water? Where did he put his hand? What did the priest say whilst he was pouring the water on your head?

After he baptized you the priest anointed the top of your head with holy oil, called holy chrism. This was a sign that you had become a child of God. He then put a white robe upon you. This was a sign that your soul had been made pure and holy by God's grace. Then your godparents held a lighted candle for you. This was a sign that you had received the gift of faith. Where did the priest anoint you after he baptized you? Of what was this a sign? Whose child had you become? What kind of robe did he put on you after that? Of what was this white robe a sign? What did your godparents then hold for you? Of what was the lighted candle a sign?

Of what Church were you a member as soon as the priest had baptized you? Whose child had you become? What had you received from

God? Why were you born again when you were baptized? What life had you received? What made your soul pure and holy then? What did Baptism take from your soul? How had original sin come upon your soul?

When could you baptize any one? Of course you would just baptize him; you would not do all that the priest does. What would you do to baptize any one? What would you say while you poured the water on his head? If you were afraid a child would die before the priest could come to baptize it, what would you do? You could baptize it with ordinary clean water.

Why did our Lord give us the Sacrament of Baptism? Where can we go if we are baptized? Why do we have to be baptized? Why does God want us to go to heaven? How does the Sacrament of Baptism show that God loves us?

Test Questions

1. Which is the first Sacrament? 2. What does the Sacrament of Baptism take away from our soul? 3. What does the Sacrament of Baptism give us? 4. Why do we need Baptism? 5. What do we become when we are baptized? 6. What does the priest do when he baptizes us? 7. What does the priest say when he baptizes us? 8. What sins does Baptism take away from grown people?

CHAPTER XXXIII

The Sacrament of Confirmation

Confirmation is the Sacrament in which we receive the Holy Ghost. In the Sacrament of Confirmation the Holy Ghost brings us many gifts. By this holy Sacrament we become strong and courageous Christians. The bishop gives Confirmation. When he gives this Sacrament he anoints the forehead with holy chrism and prays that the Holy Ghost may come unto our soul.

Children, perhaps you would like to tell me again about God's grace. What is grace to our soul? What does this new life do for our soul? How does it change our soul? Why do we need God's grace? What can we do when we have God's grace? When did you first receive God's grace? Why is Baptism like being born again? What new life did you receive when you were baptized? When did you become a child of God? When did you become a member of the Catholic Church?

Who came to save us from sin? Who brought God's grace from heaven to us? How long did our Lord stay on earth after He arose from the

dead? What did the Apostles do after our Lord went up to heaven? How long did they stay locked up in that room? What did they do during those nine days? Of what were they afraid? What happened on the tenth day? What noise did they hear? In what form did the Holy Ghost come to them? What did the Apostles do after the Holy Ghost came upon them? What made them fearless? What gave them courage to preach the Gospel?

When will the Holy Ghost come to you? In what Sacrament will you receive the Holy Ghost? What person of the Blessed Trinity will come to you in the Sacrament of Confirmation? When will God the Holy Ghost come to dwell in your soul? Why do you think the Holy Ghost comes to us in Confirmation? What will the Holy Ghost do for your soul? What will make you strong in faith? Why will you be brave and fearless after you have been confirmed? What did the Holy Ghost do for the Apostles?

Why must your soul be free from sin when you receive the Sacrament of Confirmation? Who comes to you then? Who is the Holy Ghost? What Sacrament shall you receive before being confirmed? Why shall you receive the Sacrament of Penance? Why is the day of your Confir-

mation like Pentecost was for the Apostles? When shall you become strong and fearless Christians? Why shall you be happy when you are confirmed? Why were the Apostles happy on that first Pentecost?

How long has the Holy Ghost been God? How long will the Holy Ghost be God? What can the Holy Ghost do? What does the Holy Ghost know? Why does God love you so much? Why will the Holy Ghost come into your soul? Why does He wish to make you holy? When shall you be able to see the Holy Ghost? Yes; you will be able to see God the Father, and God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost in heaven. God the Holy Ghost took the form of fiery tongues when He came upon the Apostles. When our Lord was being baptized God the Holy Ghost appeared in the form of a dove.

What spirits do you know? Why can you not see the Holy Ghost when He comes to you? What form did the Holy Ghost take when He came upon the Apostles? What form did He take at our Lord's Baptism? When the Holy Ghost comes to you He brings many gifts for your soul. The seven special gifts which He brings are wisdom, understanding, counsel, fortitude, knowledge, piety, and fear of the Lord.

Who gives Confirmation? Who gave Confirmation to the first Christians? Who sent the Apostles to give Confirmation to the first Christians? Who sends the bishop to give you Confirmation? Who went with you when you were baptized? Your godfather and godmother are called sponsors. In Confirmation you also have a sponsor. Boys have a man for sponsor in Confirmation and girls have a woman. While the bishop anoints your forehead, your sponsor holds his right hand on your right shoulder. Your sponsor is a friend who will give you good advice and help you to be faithful to God. To be a sponsor you must be confirmed and be at least fourteen years old. Now, tell me about your sponsor in Confirmation. Whom do boys have for sponsor? Whom do girls? What does your sponsor do while the bishop anoints your forehead? What will your sponsor do for you?

When did you receive your name? In what Sacrament do you generally take another name? What kind of name do you take in Confirmation? Why do you take the name of a saint in Confirmation? What will your patron saint do for you?

When you go to Confirmation, you kneel before the bishop. Your sponsor stands behind you with

his right hand on your right shoulder. You should have your hair brushed back from your forehead so that the bishop can anoint you. What does the bishop do when he confirms you? With what does he anoint your forehead? This holy oil is called holy chrism. It is olive oil with which balsam is mixed. The bishop makes the sign of the cross on your forehead with holy chrism. Then you remain kneeling where you are until the priest wipes away the holy chrism. Now, tell me how the bishop anoints your forehead. In what form does he anoint you? What is holy chrism? You know the bishop blesses the holy oils on Holy Thursday.

The holy oil is a sign of the strength which Confirmation gives to us. You know to anoint with oil is always a sign of strength. Lay persons are not permitted to touch the holy oils. While the bishop anoints the forehead he says: "I sign thee with the sign of the cross, and I confirm thee with the chrism of salvation, in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." In whose name, then, does the bishop confirm you? In whose name did the priest baptize you? In whose name does the priest forgive your sins in the Sacrament of Penance?

As soon as the bishop anoints you he gives you

a little slap on the cheek. When he does this, he says: "Peace be with thee." This little blow on the cheek is to remind you that you must be ready to suffer for your Faith. What does the bishop say when he anoints you? What does he do as soon as he has anointed you? What does he say when he gives you a little slap on the cheek? Of what does this little blow remind you? After all have been anointed the bishop stands at the altar and extends his hands over you and prays that the Holy Ghost may enter into your soul. Then all kneel and say the Apostles' Creed. This is a profession of faith made at Confirmation.

Now, I am sure you can tell me all about the Sacrament of Confirmation. Who gave the Sacrament of Confirmation to the Catholic Church? Who were the first bishops that ever gave Confirmation to the people? In whose name did the Apostles give Confirmation to the people? You can read about this in the Bible. It is told in that part of the New Testament called the Acts of the Apostles. (Acts 8, 12–17.)

Who comes to us in the Sacrament of Confirmation? Why does the Holy Ghost come into our soul? Why does the Holy Ghost wish to make our soul holy? What Sacrament makes us

strong in the life of grace? You know the Sacrament of Confirmation leaves a mark in our soul. It marks us as a soldier of Jesus Christ. God can see this mark in our soul though we cannot see it with our eyes. Could you tell anybody now about the mark which Confirmation leaves in your soul? How does Confirmation mark you? Who can see this mark in your soul? After Confirmation you must be ready, like a soldier, to die, if need be, for your Faith. For what did the martyrs suffer and die? What made the martyrs strong enough to die for the Faith? What grace do you receive in the Sacrament of Confirmation?

What does the Holy Ghost bring to you when He comes to you in Confirmation? How many special gifts does He bring to your soul? Tell me now about your sponsor. What does he do while the bishop is anointing you? Tell me about the name you take in Confirmation. In what position are you when the bishop is anointing you?

What is holy chrism? Of what is it a sign? What does the bishop do after he anoints you? Of what does the little blow on the cheek remind you? What does the bishop say whilst he anoints you? What mark does the Sacrament of Con-

firmation put upon your soul? What does Confirmation make you? What should a soldier of Jesus Christ be willing to do? What does the bishop do after he has anointed all? Of course you can be confirmed but once. For then you are always a soldier of Jesus Christ. In the same way you can be baptized but once.

Test Questions

1. What grace does the Sacrament of Confirmation give us? 2. Whom do we receive in the Sacrament of Confirmation? 3. What does the Holy Ghost bring us in Confirmation? 4. What does the Holy Ghost do for us? 5. Who gives Confirmation? 6. What does the bishop do when he confirms us? 7. Why do we go to Confession before Confirmation? 8. How does Confirmation mark us?

CHAPTER XXXIV

The Holy Eucharist

The Holy Eucharist is the Sacrament of God's love. In this holy Sacrament Christ gives us His own body and blood to be the nurture of our soul. It is the Sacrament which feeds and nourishes the life of divine grace in our soul. Christ instituted the Holy Eucharist at the Last Supper when He changed bread and wine into His own body and blood.

Children, you have told me before about some of the Sacraments. What do the Sacraments give to us? Which Sacrament first gives us God's grace? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism? What is God's grace to our soul? What does this new life do for our soul? What Sacrament makes us strong in this new life?

Once you told me about the time when you were a little baby. Who gave you to your father and mother? Who gave you your life? Why do you have to eat and drink? What would happen if you didn't eat and drink for a long time? Who gives us things to eat and drink? Why are some things good to eat and drink and others are not? Who made them like that? What keeps you strong and healthy?

What is God's grace for our soul? When were we born in this new life? What Sacrament feeds this new life in our soul? How does the Holy Eucharist feed the life of grace in our soul? Under what form does our Lord give us His body and blood in the Holy Eucharist? What keeps alive the life of grace in our soul? Why, then, did our Lord give us the Sacrament of the Holy Eucharist?

Why did God give us bread and meat and things to drink? Why did God give us the Holy Eucharist? What life does the Holy Eucharist keep in us? Why do we need the Holy Eucharist? Our Lord Himself told us this. You can read in the Gospel of St. John (6, 54) what He said. When the Jews refused to believe that He would give them His body and blood to be the food and drink of their soul, He told them that unless they ate His flesh and drank His blood they could not have life in them. Where, then, can you read that our Lord gave us His body and blood as food and drink? What did our Lord say to show that we must receive the Holy Eucharist to keep the life of grace in our soul? Under what form are our Lord's body and blood in the Holy Eucharist?

When did our Lord give us the Holy Eucharist? How did our Lord institute the Holy

Eucharist at the Last Supper? How could our Lord change bread and wine into His own body and blood? What can our Lord do? Why can our Lord do all things? You can read about how our Lord instituted the Holy Eucharist in the New Testament. St. Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, and St. Paul tell us about it. St. Matthew (24, 26–28) says: "Whilst they were at supper Jesus took bread, and blessed and broke it: and gave to His disciples and said: Take ye, and eat. This is my body. And taking the chalice, He gave thanks, and gave to them, saying: Drink ye all of this. For this is my blood of the new testament, which shall be shed for many unto the remission of sins." (See also St. Mark 14, 22–24; St. Luke 22, 19–20; I Corinthians 11, 23–25.)

Now, tell me about the Last Supper. What did our Lord first take into His hands? What did He do with the bread? What did He say while He held the bread in His hands? What happened when our Lord said?—"This is my body." What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? How long has our Lord been God? How did God make the world? What does God have to do to make anything? What would happen if God wished for another world to be made? How do you know that the bread was

changed into our Lord's body? What did our Lord say to show that He had changed bread into His body?

What did our Lord do when He took the chalice of wine into His hands? To whom did He give thanks? What did our Lord say after He had given thanks to God the Father? What happened when our Lord said?—"This is my blood." How, then, do you know that our Lord changed wine into His blood? Why was our Lord able to change wine into His blood? What would our Lord have to do to change wine into His blood? What shows that our Lord did really change wine into His blood?

What did our Lord's body and blood look like at the Last Supper? What color did our Lord's body and blood have at the Last Supper? What taste did our Lord's body and blood have at the Last Supper? If our Lord's body and blood looked like bread and wine and tasted like bread and wine, how did the Apostles know that they were receiving our Lord's body and blood? Why did the Apostles believe what our Lord said to them? Why do we say that the Apostles had faith in our Lord? How do we know that our Lord changed bread and wine into His own body and blood? Why do you believe what our Lord said? What

Church teaches us what our Lord said? Why do you believe all that the Catholic Church teaches? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us?

Where can we read how our Lord changed bread and wine into His own body and blood? How do we know what the words of the Bible mean? Who sent the Catholic Church to tell us what the words of the Bible mean? Why do many people not know what the words of the Bible really mean?

When has any one the Catholic Faith? What do you believe when you have the Catholic Faith? Why do you believe that our Lord changed bread and wine into His own body and blood? Why are you sure that the Catholic Church always teaches the truth? What does the Catholic Church tell us about the Holy Eucharist? When did Christ institute the Holy Eucharist? What happened at the Last Supper? Who were with our Lord at the Last Supper? What did our Lord give the Apostles to eat and drink? Under what form did our Lord give them His body and blood?

After our Lord had changed bread and wine into His own body and blood, He gave the Apostles power to do the same. He said to them: "Do this in remembrance of me." He gave them power to do what He had done. Who were the first

priests of the Catholic Church? Who ordained the Apostles priests? What power did our Lord give the Apostles at the Last Supper? What did our Lord say when He gave them power to change bread and wine into His body and blood?

Who ordained other priests after our Lord went up to heaven? Who gave the Apostles power to ordain other priests? Who gave these other priests power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? Who ordained priests after the Apostles died? Who ordain priests now? Who gives priests the power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When does our Lord give the priests power to change bread and wine into His body and blood?

To what Church did our Lord give the care of the seven Sacraments? Why did our Lord give the Sacraments to the care of the Catholic Church alone? Who founded the Catholic Church? To what Church did our Lord give the Holy Eucharist? Who are the only men in the world that can change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? By whose power did our Lord change bread and wine into His own body and blood? By whose power did the Apostles change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? By whose power do priests change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood?

In the catacombs at Rome you can see many pictures that represent the Holy Eucharist. By whose power did the priests in the catacombs change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? How long is it since the Christians used to worship God in the catacombs? Why did they have to hide in these dark places?

The bread we use for the Holy Eucharist is made from pure wheat flour and water. No other bread will serve for the Holy Eucharist. It is called unleavened bread because there is no yeast in it. The altar breads are baked with hot irons; they are pure white. None other than pure grape wine may be used for the Holy Eucharist.

You know our Lord's body and blood are both under the form of bread. Both His body and blood are also present under the form of wine. It is because our Lord is alive in the Holy Eucharist. Our Lord gives us His living body and blood in the Holy Eucharist.

What grace does the Holy Eucharist bring into your soul? How often does the Holy Eucharist give you more of God's grace? Why is the Holy Eucharist called the Sacrament of our Lord's body and blood? Why is it called the Sacrament of God's love? When did our Lord institute the Holy Eucharist? What did our Lord do

at the Last Supper? To whom did our Lord give the power to change bread and wine into His body and blood? To whom does our Lord give that power now? How does our Lord give that power to priests? Who sent the bishop to ordain priests?

How do we know that our Lord changed bread and wine into His body and blood? How do we know what our Lord told us? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Where can we read about how our Lord changed bread and wine into His body and blood? In what part of the Bible can we read this? How long has the Catholic Church taught about the Holy Eucharist? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? What did the Apostles teach the people about the Holy Eucharist? When did the Apostles live? Who taught the people in the catacombs about the Holy Eucharist? In how many countries of the world do priests teach the people about the Holy Eucharist?

Which Sacrament best shows God's love for us? Why does the Holy Eucharist best show God's love for us? Who comes to us in the Holy Eucharist? When did our Lord come to us in another form? In what form did our Lord come to us in the stable of Bethlehem? Which person

of the Blessed Trinity took the form of a little child? Which person of the Blessed Trinity takes the form of bread and wine? You know our Lord is both God and man. In the Holy Eucharist, too, our Lord is both God and man. What can our Lord in the Holy Eucharist do? Why can He do all things? How much does our Lord in the Holy Eucharist know? Why do we adore our Lord in the Holy Eucharist?

How does the Holy Eucharist show God's love for us? Whom can you thank for giving us the Holy Eucharist? Why did God give us the Holy Eucharist? Where will the Holy Eucharist help us to go when we die? How does the Holy Eucharist help us to go to heaven? What does it do for our soul?

Test Questions

1. What is the Holy Eucharist called? 2. What does Christ give us in the Sacrament of the Holy Eucharist? 3. Under what form does Christ give us His body and blood in the Holy Eucharist? 4. When did Christ change bread and wine into His body and blood? 5. What power did Christ give to the Apostles at the Last Supper? 6. Who gives the priests power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? 7. By what power did Christ change bread and wine into His body and blood? 8. By what power does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood?

CHAPTER XXXV

The Sacrifice of the Mass

The Mass is the same sacrifice as the Sacrifice of the Cross. On the cross Christ offered Himself in the form of a man; in the Mass He offers Himself in the form of bread and wine. The act of consecration is the essence of the Mass. At the Consecration of the Mass the priest changes bread and wine into Christ's body and blood. The priest offers the Sacrifice of the Mass by the power of Christ. We are bound under pain of mortal sin to hear Mass on Sundays and Holy Days. The Mass is the highest act of worship that can be shown to God.

Children, perhaps you would like to talk again about the Holy Eucharist. Tell me how Christ instituted the Holy Eucharist. When did Christ institute this holy Sacrament? Who were present when our Lord instituted the Holy Eucharist? What life does the Holy Eucharist nourish in our soul? What are the food and drink of our soul in the Holy Eucharist? When were you born in the life of grace? What Sacrament gave the life of grace to your soul? What Sacrament feeds your soul in the life of grace?

What did Christ do at the Last Supper? By

whose power did He change bread and wine into His own body and blood? What power did Christ give to the Apostles at the Last Supper? What did Christ say to the Apostles when He gave them power to change bread and wine into His body and blood? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? When do priests receive power to change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? Who were the first priests ever to say Mass? When did the Apostles change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? Who said Mass after the Apostles died? How long have priests been saying Mass? What does the priest do every time he says Mass? In how many parts of the world do priests say Mass?

When did Christ offer Himself to God the Father in the form of a man? Under what form does Christ offer Himself in the Sacrifice of the Mass? How is the Sacrifice of the Cross brought to us? What sacrifice does the Sacrifice of the Mass continue? To whom does Christ offer Himself in the Sacrifice of the Mass? By whose power did Christ offer Himself in the Sacrifice of the Cross? By whose power does the priest offer the Sacrifice of the Mass?

What takes place at the Consecration of the Mass? What do we call the act of changing bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? What sign is given for the Consecration of the Mass? What do you do when the bell rings at the Consecration of the Mass? Why does the priest genuflect at the Consecration? Whom is he adoring? When do the bread and wine become our Lord's body and blood? Why does the priest lift above his head our Lord's body and blood at the Consecration? Who adore our Lord's body and blood at the Elevation?

Why is the Mass the center of Catholic worship? What is the highest act of worship that we can show to God? Who is offered to God the Father in the Sacrifice of the Mass? Under what form is Christ offered to God the Father in the Sacrifice of the Mass?

When are we bound to hear Mass? What kind of sin is it to neglect Mass on Sundays and Holy Days? How often do good people like to go to Mass? Why do they like to go to Mass as often as they can? Why do many people go to Mass every day? In what sacrifice are you taking part when you hear Mass? Who is offered on the altar at Mass? Why is it like being beside our Lord's cross to be present at Mass? What

sacrifice is the same as the Sacrifice of the Cross? What did Christ do for us when He died for us on the cross? When did He redeem us from sin? What sacrifice brings the blessings from the Sacrifice of the Cross to us? Why does the Sacrifice of the Mass bring the blessings of the Sacrifice of the Cross to us?

For how many people does the priest say Mass? Who gain the greatest blessings from the Mass? Who take part in the Mass with the priest? To whom do you pray at Mass? How can you unite with the priest at Mass? How can you offer the Sacrifice of the Mass with him?

Why do you think about our Lord's suffering and death when you are at Mass? When did our Lord offer Himself in suffering and death for us? How does our Lord offer Himself in the Mass? Why is the crucifix always placed over the altar when the priest says Mass? Of what does the crucifix make us think? What is the same sacrifice as our Lord's death on the cross?

The vestments which the priest wears at Mass are like those which our Lord and the Apostles wore. They show that the Mass comes down to us from our Lord and the Apostles. They also show that the priest is not acting as an ordinary man but as a priest of God. Before the priest

begins Mass he bows down before the altar and says the Confiteor. Say the Confiteor. Why do you think he does that? What shows that he considers himself unworthy to offer the holy Sacrifice? Why do you say the Confiteor while the priest says it? When the priest goes up to the altar, he kisses it. At the same time he begs God to pardon his sins. In the altar stone there are always relics of the martyrs.

Why, then, does the priest bow down before beginning Mass? What prayer does he say at the foot of the altar? What does he do when he goes up to the altar? What does he say when he kisses the altar? What is always put into the altar stone? The altar stone is really the altar. It is consecrated by the bishop. Candles are lighted on the altar to remind us of the time when Mass used to be said in the catacombs. These lights are also a sign of faith for us.

After the priest kisses the altar, he goes to the left side of the altar and reads the opening prayer, called the Introit. Then he says the Kyrie Eleison, Christe Eleison, which means: "Lord have mercy on us, Christ have mercy on us." After that he says the Gloria. This is a beautiful prayer of praise to God. It is sung by the choir at high Mass. What prayer does the priest say

after he kisses the altar? What does Kyrie Eleison, Christe Eleison mean? What is the Gloria?

After that the priest goes to the left again and reads some prayers and the Epistle. The Epistle is taken from the Epistles of the New Testament. Several times during the Mass, the priest turns to the people and says: "Dominus vobiscum" — "The Lord be with you." The server answers: "Et cum spiritu tuo" — "And with thy spirit." Now tell me about the Epistle. At what part of the altar does the priest read it? Where is it taken from? What does "Dominus vobiscum" mean? What does the server answer?

After the Epistle the book is placed on the right side of the altar where the priest reads the Gospel. The Gospel is taken from one of the four Gospels. Then standing at the center of the altar the priest says the Credo. At high Mass the choir sings the Credo. The Credo is like the Apostles' Creed. It is called the Nicene Creed because it comes down from the Council of Nice held in the year 325.

Then the Offertory takes place. Here the priest offers to God the bread and wine that are to be changed into our Lord's body and blood. At the Offertory you can offer up your heart to

God. In olden times the people used to bring offerings and place them on the altar. Now a collection is generally taken up at the Offertory. This collection is intended for the support of religion. What does the priest read after the book has been put on the right side of the altar? Where is the Gospel taken from? What prayer does he say after he reads the Gospel? What is this Credo called? Why is it called the Nicene Creed? What takes place after the Credo? What does the priest offer at the Offertory? What do the people generally offer then?

After the Offertory the priest reads (or sings) a beautiful prayer called the Preface. In the Preface the priest renders honor to God for the sacrifice he is about to offer. At the end he praises God, saying: "Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus," which means, "Holy, holy, holy." Then the priest prays for all the living, especially for those who are present. Then takes place the Consecration. At the Consecration the priest uses the words which our Lord used at the Last Supper. Now, what beautiful prayer does the priest say after the Offertory? What does "sanctus, sanctus, sanctus" mean? Why does the priest say this? At the Sanctus the bell rings to warn

the people that the Consecration will soon take place.

What does the priest do at the Consecration? What did our Lord say at the Last Supper when He took the bread into His hands? What does the priest say at the Consecration when he takes the bread into his hands? What happened when our Lord said? — "This is my body." What happens when the priest says? — "This is my body." Why does the priest genuflect as soon as he has said? — "This is my body." Whom is he adoring? Under what form is our Lord present in his hands? Why does the priest then lift the Sacred Host above his head? Whom does he want to adore our Lord?

What did our Lord say at the Last Supper when He took the chalice of wine into His hands? What happened when He said? — "This is my blood." What does the priest say at the Consecration when he takes the chalice of wine into his hands? What happens when he says? — "This is my blood." By whose power did our Lord change bread and wine into His own body and blood? By whose power does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood?

After the Consecration the priest says other prayers. He calls upon the saints; he prays for

the souls in purgatory. Then he says the Pater Noster, the Our Father. Then comes the Communion of the Mass. The priest receives Holy Communion under the form of both bread and wine. The people receive Holy Communion under the form of bread alone. *In the Oriental rites of the Church the people also communicate under both forms.* After the Communion the priest reads some prayers. Then he turns and says: "Ite, Missa est" — "Go, the Mass is over." Then he blesses the people. At the end he reads from the first chapter of St. John's Gospel.

When does the priest pray for the souls in Purgatory? What does Pater Noster mean? What takes place after the Pater Noster? How does the priest receive Holy Communion? How do the people receive Holy Communion? Why do the people receive the same under the form of bread as the priest does under both the form of bread and the form of wine? In how many parts of the Holy Eucharist is our Lord present?

Whom does the priest worship by all that he does at Mass? To whom is the Mass offered? To whom is the priest speaking when he says Mass? In what language does the priest speak to God when he says Mass? The Mass is said

in Latin in the greater part of the world. This keeps the words of the Mass from changing with the words of many languages. Now, what would you tell any one who asked you why the priest uses Latin in the Mass?

There are five colors used in the vestments of the Mass: white, red, green, purple, and black. What does white signify? Red? Purple? Black? Green is the sign of life just as grass and plants are green when they are growing. Green is the color ordinarily used on Sundays and on some other days when there is no special feast. Now, what could you tell any one about the colors used in the vestments? What does green signify? When are green vestments ordinarily used? Of what do the lighted candles remind us at Mass? When did they need lights at Mass?

What is the greatest act of worship to God? What sacrifice does the Mass continue? Who was offered in the Sacrifice of the Cross and who is offered in the Sacrifice of the Mass? Why is the Mass the same sacrifice as the Sacrifice of the Cross? What blessings does the Mass bring to us? Who are the only persons that can offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? When do priests receive power to offer the Sacrifice of the Mass?

Test Questions

1. When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? 2. To whom does the priest offer our Lord's body and blood in the Mass? 3. What is the same sacrifice as the Sacrifice of the Cross? 4. Under what form does Christ offer Himself in the Mass? 5. What is the Consecration of the Mass? 6. By whose power does the priest offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? 7. What is the highest act of worship that can be shown to God? 8. When are we bound to hear Mass?

CHAPTER XXXVI

The Real Presence

Our Lord is present in the Holy Eucharist both as God and as man. There His Godhead, His soul, and His body are present. He lives in the Blessed Sacrament out of love for us. Hence God the Son, the second person of the Blessed Trinity, really and truly dwells upon our altars under the form of bread. From the tabernacle He listens to our prayers and blesses us when we come to visit Him. We adore the Holy Eucharist because God the Son is truly present there.

Tell me, children, about God's love for us. How does God show His love for us? Why does God love us so much? When did we become God's children? When did we receive a new life for our soul? What is this new life which God gave us in Baptism? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism? What Sacrament makes us strong in the life of grace? Who gives us Confirmation? How many Sacraments give us God's grace? Which Sacrament nourishes the life of grace in our soul? What is the food of our soul in the Holy Eucharist? Under what form does our Lord give us His body and blood in the Holy Eucharist?

Who changes bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? By whose power does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? At what part of the Mass does this change take place? What does the priest say at the Consecration? Whose words are these? Why does he use the words of Christ? Who is really and truly present in the Holy Eucharist? Which person of the Blessed Trinity is present there? Which person of the Blessed Trinity was present in the manger at Bethlehem? Which person of the Blessed Trinity was nailed to the cross on Mount Calvary?

Why do we say that our Lord is both God and man? How long has our Lord been God? When did our Lord become man? Why can we say that the Blessed Infant of Bethlehem was truly God? What showed that our Lord was man, too? Why did He have a body like ours?

Why do we say that our Lord is present in the Holy Eucharist both as God and as man? What can our Lord in the Holy Eucharist do? What can our Lord in the Holy Eucharist know? To which other two divine persons is our Lord in the Holy Eucharist equal? How do we know that

our Lord is present in the Holy Eucharist as man, too? How do we know that our Lord has a living body in the Holy Eucharist? What did our Lord say at the Last Supper when He took the bread into His hands?

How do we know that our Lord's soul is in the Holy Eucharist? When is our Lord alive in the Holy Eucharist? When was our Lord's soul separated from His body? Why is our Lord able to take the form of bread and wine? What can God the Son do?

How do you know, when you enter the church, whether our Lord is present on the altar? What does the red light burning near the altar show? This light which is generally red is called the sanctuary lamp. In it is burned olive oil. The sanctuary is that part of the Church around the main altar, enclosed by the altar rail. It is called the sanctuary (holy portion) because there the Sacrifice of the Mass is offered and there the Blessed Sacrament is kept. Now, tell me about the sanctuary lamp. What does it show? What kind of oil is generally burned in it? We honor our Lord by keeping this light always burning. The light of the sanctuary lamp is a sign of faith. It shows that we believe that our Lord is really present in the Holy Eucharist. In whose honor

do we keep the sanctuary lamp burning? Of what is this light a sign? In what does it show that we believe?

Why do you genuflect when you enter a church in which the sanctuary lamp is burning? Whom do you adore when you genuflect? Why do you adore Jesus Christ in the Holy Eucharist? Who is the only one that we adore? How long has our Lord been God? Of what do you try to think when you genuflect? Why do you always try to think of God's power and love when you genuflect to the Blessed Sacrament? Why do you always try to genuflect properly? What do you show to our Lord when you genuflect in the proper manner? How does it show that you wish to honor Him?

When do you genuflect on both knees in the church? How do you genuflect when the Blessed Sacrament is exposed on the altar? When is the Blessed Sacrament exposed? What takes place all day on Holy Thursday? Why is the Blessed Sacrament exposed on Holy Thursday? When is Holy Thursday? Thursday of Holy Week is also called Maundy Thursday, which means the day on which Christ gave us the Commandment of Love. Maundy is an old word which means commandment.

Why do you like especially to visit the church

on Holy Thursday? There are indeed beautiful ceremonies on Holy Thursday. On this day the altar is decked in white. The crucifix and the statues are covered with white. There is a place called the repository prepared for the Blessed Sacrament on a side altar. In cathedrals the bishop blesses the holy oils on Holy Thursday. In the churches there is a procession with the Blessed Sacrament after Mass. Why do you think the priest carries the Blessed Sacrament among the people in procession? Why do you bow down piously when the priest bears the Blessed Sacrament by? Whom do you adore then?

What takes place at Forty Hours Devotion? How long is the Blessed Sacrament exposed? Why do good people like to visit the church so often during Forty Hours Devotion? There is a procession with the Blessed Sacrament at the beginning and at the closing of the Forty Hours Devotion. The people all try to go to Holy Communion during these devotions. There is also a procession with the Blessed Sacrament on Corpus Christi or the following Sunday. Tell me now about the processions with the Blessed Sacrament that take place during the year. Why do we honor the Blessed Sacrament so much? Who is present there?

Tell me about Benediction with the Blessed Sacrament. What is the case made like the rays of the sun called? (*The ostensorium or monstrance.*) Why does the priest put the Blessed Sacrament into the monstrance and set it upon the altar? Why do the people bow down when the priest does this? Why does the priest burn incense before the Blessed Sacrament? Whom does he honor when he burns incense there? Toward the end of Benediction why does the priest put a veil about his shoulders, take the Blessed Sacrament into his hands, turn to the people and make the sign of the cross over them? Who is really blessing the people when he does this? Why do you like to be present at Benediction? Whom do you adore during Benediction? How do you genuflect if you pass before the altar during Benediction? How do you genuflect if you pass before the altar after the Consecration of the Mass?

Why do people kneel on both knees as the priest enters the house to give the last Sacraments to a sick person? What does the priest carry on his breast when he comes to give the last Sacraments? Whom do you adore when you kneel as he enters the house? Why do you kneel while the priest is giving Holy Communion to

the sick person? When going to the sick, the priest carries the Blessed Sacrament in a little gold-lined case about the size of a watch. It is called the pyx. In the tabernacle the Blessed Sacrament is kept in a covered vessel that looks like a chalice. It is called the ciborium. Ciborium means a place in which food is kept. What does the Holy Eucharist feed? What is the food of our soul in the Holy Eucharist? What is the Holy Eucharist called when given to the dying? Why is it called Holy Viaticum? For what journey does it prepare the dying person?

Why does our Lord dwell upon our altars? Why does He wish to live among us? Why does He love us so much? Why is the Holy Eucharist called the Sacrament of God's love? How do we show our love for our Lord on the altar? What does it show when we visit Him often in the church? What do you do when you go to visit our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament? How do you talk with Him? When does our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament listen to you? What does our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament know about your thoughts when you kneel before Him? How much does our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament know? Why does our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament know all things? Which person of the

Blessed Trinity is He? What will our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament do for you every time you visit Him? Why will He bless you? What does it show when you go often to pray before Him?

Who is present in the Blessed Sacrament? How do you know that our Lord is present there? When did our Lord tell us that? How do you know our Lord's body is there, too? Why do you love our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament so much? Why do you always behave so well in the church? Who is present there? Where is our Lord present? On what part of the altar is the tabernacle? Why do people keep so quiet and pray so much in the church? Why do you keep from talking and looking around in church? With whom do you wish to talk all the time while you are in church? Whom do you respect when you behave well in church?

Why can no other than the priest touch the Blessed Sacrament? I will tell you. When the priest is ordained, his hands are consecrated. So no other than consecrated hands should touch the Blessed Sacrament. Of course, in case of necessity, as in a fire, any one could carry the Blessed Sacrament to safety if there were no priest there. None other than the priest is allowed to touch the vessels in which the Blessed

Sacrament is kept. Such are the chalice, the ciborium, the monstrance, the pyx. When lay persons wish to handle them they generally hold them with a white cloth. Sacristans, however, are sometimes given permission to handle the sacred vessels. Why, then, can none other than the priest handle the Blessed Sacrament? Who alone is permitted to handle the sacred vessels? Why do we wish to show such respect for the sacred vessels?

Which Sacrament best shows God's love for us? Why does the Holy Eucharist best show God's love for us? How do you show love, honor, and respect for our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament? Why does our Lord dwell in no other than Catholic churches? Whose Church is the Catholic Church?

Test Questions

1. Where is our Lord really present on earth as God and as man? 2. Which person of the Blessed Trinity is really present in the Blessed Sacrament? 3. How do we know when the Blessed Sacrament is in the tabernacle? 4. Why do we genuflect before the Blessed Sacrament? 5. Why does our Lord live in the Blessed Sacrament? 6. How do we know that our Lord is really present in the Blessed Sacrament? 7. What Church teaches us that our Lord is really present in the Blessed Sacrament? 8. What does God the Son do for us when we visit Him?

CHAPTER XXXVII

Holy Communion

We receive the Holy Eucharist when we go to Holy Communion. When we receive Holy Communion, our Lord really and truly enters into our soul and body. Our Lord comes to us in Holy Communion under the form of bread. When we receive the Holy Eucharist, we receive more of God's grace. Our soul must be free from sin when we receive the Holy Eucharist. We prepare our soul for Holy Communion by prayer.

You have told me many interesting things about the Sacraments, children. Perhaps you would like to talk about them again. Tell me about Baptism; Confirmation; the Holy Eucharist. What do the Sacraments bring to our soul? What do you call divine grace? When did you first receive this new life for your soul? What does divine grace do for your soul? What does it make you able to do? Why do you need God's grace? How many people need God's grace to get to heaven?

Which is the Sacrament of God's love? Why is the Holy Eucharist called the Sacrament of

God's love? What does our Lord give us in the Holy Eucharist? Why does our Lord give us His body and blood in the Holy Eucharist? What does the Holy Eucharist do for our soul? What is the food of our soul in the Holy Eucharist? Under what form do we receive our Lord's body and blood in the Holy Eucharist? Who changes bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When do we receive the Holy Eucharist? What do we receive in the Holy Eucharist when we go to Holy Communion? Under what form do we receive our Lord's body and blood when we go to Holy Communion?

Who were the first ever to receive Holy Communion? Who gave the Apostles their first Communion? When did our Lord give the Apostles their first Communion? When does our Lord really come into our soul and our body? What form does our Lord take when He comes to us in Holy Communion? What person of the Blessed Trinity is our Lord? How long has our Lord been God? How long will our Lord be God? When did our Lord become man? When does our Lord come to us both as God and as man?

When does our Lord come to live in our soul

and our body? Under what two forms is our Lord really present? Who is really present under the form of bread in the Holy Eucharist? Who is really present under the form of wine? You know the priest receives Holy Communion in the Mass under the form both of bread and of wine. The people receive Holy Communion under the form of bread alone. Yet both the priest and the people receive just the same. Both receive our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. Under which separate forms is our Lord really present in the Holy Eucharist? Whom does the priest receive when he receives Holy Communion under the form both of bread and of wine? Whom do the people receive when they receive Holy Communion? Yes; our Lord is whole and entire both under the form of bread and under the form of wine. Then if the priest breaks a sacred host, our Lord is present whole and entire under each part of it.

The Communion of the priest at Mass is a part of the Mass. Before he receives Holy Communion the priest strikes his breast and says three times: "Lord, I am not worthy that Thou shouldst enter under my roof; but say only the word and my soul shall be healed." (St. Matt. 8, 8.) Why do you think the priest says?—"Lord,

I am not worthy." Whom is the priest about to receive? Why is nobody worthy to receive our Lord? Who makes us worthy to receive our Lord in Holy Communion?

Before the priest gives Holy Communion he turns and holds the Blessed Sacrament before the people, saying three times: "Domine, non sum dignus, etc." This means: "Lord, I am not worthy." He is saying the same as he said before receiving Holy Communion himself. Why do the people strike their breast before Holy Communion when the priest says?—"Domine, non sum dignus." Why do they wish to show that they are not worthy to receive our Lord? Before Holy Communion the Confiteor is also said. Why do you think the Confiteor is said? To whom do we acknowledge our faults when we say the Confiteor? Whom do we ask to pray for us when we say the Confiteor?

How must your soul be when you receive our Lord in Holy Communion? What makes your soul pure and holy? What does God's grace do for your soul? What makes your soul pleasing to God?

What is the only thing that can take God's grace away from the soul? From what must our soul be free when we receive Holy Com-

munion? Why must our soul be free from mortal sin when we go to Holy Communion? Why must our soul be pure and holy when we go to Holy Communion? Who comes to us in Holy Communion? What should anybody do before Holy Communion if he is in mortal sin? Why should he go to Confession? What Sacrament does he receive when he goes to Confession? What does the Sacrament of Penance do for his soul? Which Sacrament takes sin from the soul?

For what must he be sorry to have his sins taken away in the Sacrament of Penance? How many sins must he tell in Confession? What should he do if he has forgotten to tell a sin? What should he do the next time he goes to Confession? If anybody is going to Holy Communion and recalls a sin that he has forgotten to tell in Confession, he may still go to Holy Communion. But he should tell the forgotten sin the next time he goes to Confession. Now, if somebody tells you he forgot a sin, what would you tell him he can do? People who go to Holy Communion every day generally go to Confession once a week. They may never have any mortal sins, but they tell their venial sins. When is it necessary for anybody to go to Confession before Holy Communion? What kind of sin must he

have on his soul before it is necessary to go to Confession? How often do those who go to Holy Communion every day generally go to Confession?

How often is our Lord willing to come to you in Holy Communion? Why is He willing to come to you every day? Why does He love you so much? What does our Lord bring you every time He comes to you in Holy Communion? How often does He give you more divine grace? With what is your soul fed when you go to Holy Communion?

When your soul is free from mortal sin, you always receive divine grace in Holy Communion. When would any one not receive divine grace in Holy Communion? What would any one not receive in Holy Communion if he were in mortal sin? What sin would any one commit if he went to Holy Communion with mortal sin on his soul? He would commit a sacrilege. He would have to tell this sin in Confession afterwards. What sin, then, would any one commit if he went to Holy Communion with a mortal sin on his soul? From what must our soul be free when we go to Holy Communion? In what condition must our soul be when we receive the Holy Eucharist? What makes our soul holy and pure?

Why must you not eat or drink anything before going to Holy Communion? From what must you keep from the midnight before? Why do you fast from the midnight before Holy Communion? For whom are you showing respect when you fast before Holy Communion? What should anybody do if he forgets and eats or drinks something before Holy Communion? Why should he wait for another day to go to Holy Communion? Why do you try to be neat and tidy when you go to Holy Communion? Who is coming to you in Holy Communion? Why are you careful to be very kind to others before Holy Communion? Why do you try to be as good as you can be before Holy Communion?

What do you do during Mass before Holy Communion? Why do you try to pray so well? For whom are you preparing your soul? Why do you like to think much about our Lord before Holy Communion? Why is the Holy Eucharist called the Sacrament of God's love? Why does our Lord wish to come into your soul and body? How does that show His love for you? How do you prepare your soul to receive our divine Lord?

What does our Lord bring you in Holy Communion? What does God's grace do for your soul? How often will our Lord bring you more

of God's grace? What will God's grace do for you every time you receive more of it? What will make your soul still more holy and beautiful? How do you keep your eyes when you are going to Holy Communion? Why do you keep your eyes cast down? Of whom can you think better when you have your eyes cast down? How do you hold your hands when you are going to Holy Communion? Of what is it a sign when you keep your hands folded nicely? For whom are you showing respect? Why do you genuflect when you are going to Holy Communion? Whom are you adoring? Why do you genuflect as nicely as you can? Why do you not genuflect after Holy Communion? Where are you carrying the Blessed Sacrament after Holy Communion? When is the Blessed Sacrament in your body?

Why do you kneel while you are receiving Holy Communion? Whom are you adoring when you kneel there? Why do you keep your eyes cast down while the priest is giving Holy Communion? When the priest gives you Holy Communion, he takes the Sacred Host from the ciborium and makes the sign of the cross over you with it. At the same time he says: "May the body of our Lord, Jesus Christ, keep thy soul unto everlasting life. Amen." You then

extend the tongue a little to receive the Blessed Sacrament into your mouth. Why do you keep your hands away from your mouth? Who is the only person that is allowed to handle the Blessed Sacrament? After the priest has put the Blessed Sacrament into your mouth you quietly and gently swallow it. Then our divine Lord is really and truly within you.

Now, could you tell anybody what the priest does when he gives you Holy Communion? How does he make the sign of the cross over you? What does he say while he is putting the Blessed Sacrament into your mouth? What do you do after the priest has put the Blessed Sacrament into your mouth? When do you swallow it? Why do you keep your eyes cast down and your hands folded when you are going back to your place? Why do you not genuflect going back? Where is the Blessed Sacrament then? What do you do after you return to your place? Why do you pray then? For what do you thank our Lord then? About how long does our Lord stay in you after Holy Communion? (*About fifteen minutes.*) At least how long should you remain in prayer after Holy Communion?

Where is our Lord for you after Holy Communion? Why is our Lord glad to be in you

after Holy Communion? What does our Lord like to listen to while He is within you? How do you talk to our Lord while you have Him within you? What will our Lord do for you when He is in your body? What person of the Blessed Trinity is really and truly in your soul and body after Holy Communion? Where is our Lord's body then? Under what form does God the Son come to you in Holy Communion?

How can you show your love for God the Son when He comes to you in Holy Communion? What does it show when you remain to pray after Holy Communion? What can you do for others after Holy Communion, to show your love for our Lord? Why does it show love for our Lord when you pray for others? How many of them does our Lord love? What can you do for sinners to show your love for our Lord? What can you do for the souls in purgatory to show your love for our Lord? What do you ask our Lord to do for you when you have Him after Holy Communion? What do you ask Him to do for your mother and father and your brothers and sisters? What do you ask Him to do for the Pope and for all bishops and priests? What do you ask Him to do for all the people in the world?

What will happen to your body when you die? When shall you have your body alive again? When does our Lord come into your body? The Holy Eucharist prepares your body to rise again on the last day. It makes your body holy and pure so that it will be glorious when God raises it up at the end of the world. For what, now, does the Holy Eucharist prepare your body? What makes your body holy and pure? Whose children are we all? When did we become children of God? What new life did we receive in Baptism? When did we all become members of the Catholic Church? In what Sacrament do the members of the Catholic Church receive our Lord? What Sacrament unites us all in love? Why does the Holy Eucharist unite us all in love? Whom do we all receive in the Holy Eucharist?

Why are we all like one big family? Who is our Father? Why is the altar rail like the family table? What food for our soul do we all receive at the altar rail? How does the Holy Eucharist unite us all in love? Where do rich and poor and great and humble kneel together to receive our Lord? What united the Apostles in love? What united the saints and martyrs in love? What Sacrament unites us all in love?

Test Questions

1. When do we receive the Holy Eucharist? 2. What do we receive in the Holy Eucharist? 3. Under what form does our Lord come to us in Holy Communion? 4. Under what two forms is our Lord really and truly present? 5. How does the Holy Eucharist feed our soul? 6. What grace do we receive when we go to Holy Communion? 7. How do we prepare our soul for Holy Communion? 8. From what must our soul be free when we go to Holy Communion?

CHAPTER XXXVIII

The Sacrament of Penance

The Sacrament of Penance takes away our sins. Our Lord gave us the Sacrament of Penance. Mortal sin takes away God's grace from the soul. The Sacrament of Penance restores God's grace to the soul. The priest forgives our sins in the Sacrament of Penance by the power of Christ. We tell all our sins to the priest in Confession. To be forgiven in the Sacrament of Penance we must be sorry for our sins and promise not to commit sin again.

Tell me once again, children, about God's grace. What is God's grace for our soul? When do we receive this new life for our soul? When were we born again? What did Baptism give us? What does God's grace do for our soul? What can we do when we have God's grace? What Sacrament makes our soul strong in God's grace? Who gives us the Sacrament of Confirmation? Which person of the Blessed Trinity comes to us in Confirmation? Why does the Holy Ghost come to us?

What Sacrament feeds your soul? What is the food of our soul in the Holy Eucharist? Under what form do we receive the body and blood of Christ in the Holy Eucharist? How does our

Lord come into the Holy Eucharist? Who changes bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? When do we receive our Lord's body and blood?

What sin did Baptism take away from your soul? When grown people are baptized, what sins does Baptism take away from their soul? What Sacrament takes away people's sins after they have been baptized? What sins will the Sacrament of Penance take away from their soul?

How often can anybody be baptized? How often can we receive the Sacrament of Penance? What Sacrament should any one receive if he falls into sin after he has been baptized? What is the only thing that can take God's grace away from the soul? What Sacrament gives back God's grace to the soul? What does the Sacrament of Penance give back to the soul?

When does any one lose the life of grace? What does mortal sin take away from the soul? What is like the death of the soul? Why is mortal sin like the death of the soul? What life does it take from the soul? What Sacrament gives back the life of grace to the soul? How does the Sacrament of Penance give back the life of grace to the soul? What does it take from the soul? What should

any one do when he loses the life of grace? Why should he receive the Sacrament of Penance? What will the Sacrament of Penance do for him? What will it give to his soul? What will it take from his soul?

What do venial sins do to the soul? Whom do venial sins displease? What kind of sins make us love God less? What sins are like sickness in the soul? What Sacrament takes away venial sins from our soul? How many sins does the Sacrament of Penance take from our soul? Why is the Sacrament of Penance like medicine for our soul? From what does the Sacrament of Penance heal our soul? What is like sickness in our soul? How can we heal our soul when it is sick in sin? What medicine did God give us for our soul? You know God gives us medicines for our body. When we are sick, we take these medicines to cure us. The Sacrament of Penance does the same for our soul. When our soul is sick in sin, the Sacrament of Penance cures us. But it is a wonderful medicine because it can give back the life of grace to the soul. Why now do we call the Sacrament of Penance the medicine of our soul? What life does the Sacrament of Penance cure in our soul? When does any one lose the life of grace? What gives back this life to him?

Who gives us the Sacrament of Penance? What does the priest take from the soul in the Sacrament of Penance? How many sins does the priest take from the soul in the Sacrament of Penance? Who were the first priests that ever took away sins in the Sacrament of Penance? Who gave the Apostles power to take away sins? Why did our Lord give the Apostles power to take away people's sins? What were the Apostles in the Catholic Church? Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? Who gives the priest power to forgive sins in the Sacrament of Penance? How many sins can the priest forgive in the Sacrament of Penance? By whose power does the priest forgive sins in the Sacrament of Penance? By whose power did the Apostles forgive sins? By whose power did our Lord forgive sins?

You can read in the Gospels how our Lord forgave sins. He forgave Mary Magdalen's sins. (St. Luke 7, 48.) He forgave the paralytic his sins (St. Matt. 9, 2), and many others. This is the power our Lord gives to the priest.

What sin did the priest take from your soul when he baptized you? Who gave the priest power to take away original sin from your soul? What sins does the priest take away from grown

people when he baptizes them? In what other Sacrament does the priest forgive sins? What did the priest say when he baptized you? In whose name did he baptize you? What does the priest say when he forgives your sins in the Sacrament of Penance? He says: "I forgive thee thy sins in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." In whose name, then, does the priest forgive sins in the Sacrament of Penance? When do we receive the Sacrament of Penance? What do we tell in Confession? What kind of sins are we bound to tell in Confession? To whom do we tell our sins in Confession? For whom is the priest forgiving our sins in Confession?

When is our Confession good? What kind of Confession do we make when we tell all our mortal sins? When does anybody make a bad Confession? What kind of Confession does anybody make when he hides a mortal sin in Confession? What kind of sin would it be to hide a mortal sin in Confession? Now, tell me, when would any one commit a sacrilege in Confession? What kind of Confession would he make if he kept back a mortal sin in Confession? Why would it be better not to go to Confession than to make a bad Confession? Why can the

priest not forgive any one that makes a bad Confession? What must we do so that the priest can forgive our sins? How many sins has anybody still on his soul after he makes a bad Confession? What extra sin has he then? When did he commit the sin of sacrilege? If anybody makes a bad Confession, why must he tell all his sins again in his next Confession? Why were his sins not forgiven? What sin did he commit when he lied in Confession?

For what must we be sorry when we go to Confession? For how many of our sins must we be sorry? What prayer do we say in Confession to show that we are sorry for our sins? When do we say the Act of Contrition in Confession? What is God to us? Whose children are we all? What does God do for us to show that He loves us? Why does God want us to go to heaven? Whom does any one disobey when he commits sin?

Why are we sorry for our sins? How many of us does God love? Why do you love God so much? Against whom do people turn when they commit a mortal sin? Whom do they love less when they commit venial sin? Why do we say in the Act of Contrition? — "O my God, I am sorry for all my sins." Why do we say to God? — "because thou art all good and deserving of all

love." Why do we say? — "because I dread the loss of heaven and the pains of hell." What is the only thing that can make people lose heaven? What kind of sin makes people lose heaven? What is the only thing that can send people to hell?

What do we promise in Confession? Why do we promise never to commit sin any more? Why do we wish never to commit sin any more? How does that show that we are sorry for our sins? What do we mean when we say? — "I firmly resolve, by the help of Thy grace, to do all that I can to atone for my sins." How do we atone for our sins? Yes; we atone for our sins by doing penance.

Why does the priest give us a penance after Confession? Why do we do penance? For what are people sorry when they do penance? What kind of penance does the priest generally give us? What are the prayers and the good works which the priest tells us to do? Why are we bound to do the penance which the priest gives us? Why are you always glad to do it? What does it show when we do our penance well? How does that show that we are sorry for our sins? Why do you try to do your penance soon after Confession? When might any one forget to do

his penance? If any one fails to do his penance, when must he tell it? What must he tell the priest in his next Confession? Why do many good people do penance all their life? Who is pleased when we do penance?

How often can you go to Confession? Why do many good people go to Confession every week? What Sacrament helps people keep from sin? Yes; the Sacrament of Penance gives us grace to avoid sin. If we have no sins, we go to Confession to gain this grace. For the Sacrament of Penance always gives grace.

What do people tell in Confession if they have committed no sins? They tell some sin that they have already told in Confession. Even though the sin has been long since forgiven they can tell it over in Confession. We must tell at least some venial sin so as to receive the Sacrament of Penance. Now, how can people receive the Sacrament of Penance if they have committed no sin? What sin can they tell over again? For what must they be sorry? To receive the Sacrament of Penance we must always have sorrow for sin or contrition. We must have contrition even though we merely tell a sin of our past life that has been forgiven.

What must anybody do that has forgotten to

tell a mortal sin in Confession? When should he tell it? What kind of Confession has he made if he has merely forgotten to tell a sin? Why is his Confession good? How many sins did he try to tell? Why must we tell the number of times we have committed a sin? How many sins must we tell in Confession? What kind of sins must we tell in Confession? What kind of sins is it good also to tell in Confession? What will help us keep from venial sin? How many sins are forgiven in Confession? When are venial sins that are told forgiven? How many sins are forgiven when all the mortal sins are forgiven? Of course, it is impossible sometimes to tell all venial sins. But even if venial sins are not told in Confession, they are forgiven.

If anybody is in mortal sin, what will the Sacrament of Penance do for his soul? What will he receive? What does mortal sin take away from his soul? Why is his soul said to be dead? What life has he lost? How can anybody regain the life of grace? Why is the Sacrament of Penance like medicine for our soul? From what does it cure our soul? What grace does it give us when we have committed no sins? What does it help us avoid? Why do many good people go so often to Confession?

Indulgences. You know, children, after our sins are forgiven we must do penance for them. In the beginning the priests used to give very long penances. Sometimes it would take many years to do these penances. Now, what must we do after our sins are forgiven? For what must we do penance? What kind of penances did the priests used to give in the beginning? How long would it sometimes take the people to do these penances?

Of course, the saints did penance all their lives. Our Lord and the Blessed Virgin did penance all their lives. But indeed they never had any sins. So all their good works count for us. They left those good works to the Catholic Church. Now, where are the good works of our Lord and the Blessed Virgin? To what Church did they leave them? Why did our Lord and the Blessed Virgin not need to do penance? Who did more penance than they needed? How long did the saints do penance? For whom did our Lord and the Blessed Virgin and the saints leave their good works in the Church?

Yes; they left their good works in the Catholic Church for us. Our Holy Father, the Pope, gives us some of those good works whenever he will. When the Holy Father gives us some of those

good works, they are like penance for our sins. Now, for whom did our Lord and the Blessed Virgin and the saints leave their good works in the Church? Who can give us some of those good works? What are those good works like when the Pope gives us some of them? Whose works can the Pope give us to be like penance for our sins?

When the Pope gives us some of those good works, he is granting us an indulgence. If the Pope grants us an indulgence of one hundred days he gives us enough of these good works for one hundred days' penance. Of course he does not give us the good works; he gives us the merit of them. Now, what does the Pope give us when he grants us an indulgence? What kind of indulgence is equal to one hundred days' penance? What kind of indulgence is equal to three hundred days' penance? To what is an indulgence of seven years equal?

An indulgence of one hundred days, three hundred days, seven years, and the like is equal to part of the penance we should do. So it is called a partial indulgence. When an indulgence is equal to all the penance we should do, it is called a plenary indulgence.

Now, to what is a partial indulgence equal?

Why is an indulgence of one hundred days called a partial indulgence? What kind of indulgence is an indulgence of seven years? To what is a plenary indulgence equal? What kind of indulgence is equal to all the penance that we should do? We can gain many indulgences for the souls in purgatory. Indulgences are a great favor of God to us. God gave all those good works of our Lord and the Blessed Virgin and the saints to the Catholic Church for us. This shows again how great is God's love for us. The Pope grants indulgences for certain prayers and good works. We should try to gain all the indulgences we can. For you know those who do not do enough penance for their sins go to purgatory.

Now tell me about indulgences. Whose good works are left to the Church? Who grants indulgences? To what is a partial indulgence equal? To what is a plenary indulgence equal?

TEST QUESTIONS

1. What sins does the Sacrament of Penance take from the soul? 2. By whose power does the priest forgive sins in the Sacrament of Penance? 3. What sins must we tell in Confession? 4. What other sins is it good also to confess? 5. What kind of sin is it to hide a mortal sin in Confession? 6. For what must we be sorry to be forgiven in the Sacrament of Penance? 7. To what is a partial indulgence equal? 8. To what is a plenary indulgence equal?

CHAPTER XXXIX

The Sacraments of Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony

Our Lord gave us the Sacrament of Extreme Unction to prepare us for death. It is intended for those alone who are in danger of death from sickness or injury. The Sacrament of Extreme Unction gives us grace to meet death with courage and strength.

Holy Orders is the Sacrament which gives a priesthood to the Church. In this holy Sacrament the sacred ministers are ordained. They receive power and grace to perform their sacred functions.

Matrimony is the Sacrament upon which the family is founded. Those who receive this great Sacrament become husband and wife. They receive grace to love each other and to raise up children to God. They are husband and wife until death.

Now, children, tell me about the Sacraments. Tell me what the Sacraments give us. What Sacraments have you received? What is divine grace for your soul? When did you receive this new life for your soul? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism? What did Baptism take away from your soul? What did Baptism give you? What did God's grace do for your soul?

When did you become children of God? When did you become members of the Catholic Church?

When will you (did you) receive the Holy Ghost? Who will give (gave) you the Sacrament of Confirmation? What does the Sacrament of Confirmation do for our soul? What Sacrament makes us strong in faith? What Sacrament feeds our soul? What is the food of our soul in the Sacrament of the Holy Eucharist? Under what form do we receive our Lord's body and blood in Holy Communion? How do our Lord's body and blood come under the form of bread and wine? When does the priest change bread and wine into our Lord's body and blood? Why does our Lord come to us in the Holy Eucharist?

What does the Sacrament of Penance do for us? Who forgives our sins in the Sacrament of Penance? By whose power does the priest forgive our sins in the Sacrament of Penance? What do we have to do to have our sins forgiven in the Sacrament of Penance? For what must we be sorry? What must we promise? Why is the Sacrament of Penance like medicine for our soul?

Why did our Lord give us the seven Sacraments? Why do we need God's grace? How many of us need God's grace to get to heaven? When do we

go to heaven? What do people need for their souls when they are sick and about to die? Why do they need God's grace very much when they are about to die? For what must they prepare when they are dangerously sick? What Sacrament did our Lord give us to prepare us for death?

For what does Extreme Unction prepare us? When do people receive Extreme Unction? What Sacrament do people receive when they are in danger of death from sickness or injury? What should you do if any one is dangerously sick? Why should you call the priest? What Sacrament will the priest give the sick person? What should you do if any one is dangerously hurt in an accident? Why should you call the priest? What grace does the Sacrament of Extreme Unction give us? Why does it give us strength and courage? What does it sometimes do for the body? You can read about the Sacrament of Extreme Unction in the Epistle of St. James. (St. James 5, 14–15.) This is an Epistle of the New Testament.

What does the priest do when he gives us Extreme Unction? With what does he anoint us? What parts of our body does he anoint? What does he say when he anoints the eyes; the ears; the nostrils; the lips; the hands; the feet? How

does anybody sin with his eyes; his ears; his nostrils; his lips; his hands; his feet?

Now, when would you call the priest to a person who is sick or injured? Why would you call him? What Sacrament would he give the person? What other two Sacraments, besides Extreme Unction, would he give the person? What three Sacraments are called the Last Sacraments? Why does the priest give the dying person the Sacrament of Penance? What is the Holy Eucharist called when given to the dying? Why is it called Holy Viaticum? For what journey is it the food? When can people receive the Holy Eucharist without fasting?

Why do you all kneel when the priest enters the house to give the Last Sacraments? What is he carrying to the sick person? When do you enter the sick room? When does the priest hear the sick person's Confession? What Sacrament does the priest give the sick person after he hears his Confession? What do you do while the priest is giving the sick person Holy Communion? What prayers do you say while you are kneeling in the sick room? What Sacrament does the priest give last?

What do you prepare when the priest is coming to give the Last Sacraments? How do you pre-

pare the sick person and the sick room? What do you put on the table in the sick room? What kind of cover do you put on it? Where do you put the blessed candle? When do you light it? *When the priest is about to arrive.* Where do you put the crucifix? Where do you put a glass of water and a teaspoon? What prayers do you say when people are dying? Why do you all kneel and pray? For whom do you pray? Why do you ask God to have mercy on the sick person? What will happen as soon as the person dies? When will God judge him?

That is a Christian death when any one receives the Last Sacraments and dies with friends and dear ones praying about him. To whom do we pray for a happy death? Why do we pray to St. Joseph for a happy death? Who was with St. Joseph when he died? Now tell me your idea of a happy death. What kind of people have a happy death? For what are good people preparing all their life? Where are we going when we die? When are we going to our true home? When are we going to meet our Heavenly Father? When people are dying, the priest gives them the Last Sacraments. Finally he gives them the last blessing. This is a special blessing intended for the moment of death.

The Sacrament of Holy Orders

Who were the first priests of the Catholic Church? Who ordained the Apostles priests? What Sacrament did the Apostles receive when our Lord ordained them priests? When Christ ordained the Apostles priests, He gave them three great powers. He gave them power to preach the Gospel, power to give the Sacraments to the people, and power to offer the holy Sacrifice of the Mass. These are the three great powers of the priesthood.

How many of the Sacraments give grace? What Sacrament gives priests grace to do their sacred duties? What grace did the Apostles receive when Christ ordained them? For whom do priests preach the Gospel, give the people the Sacraments, and offer the Sacrifice of the Mass? Whose ministers are they? Who are ministers of Christ? In whose name do they work for the people?

Why was our Lord born into the world? From what did He come to save us? Why did He wish to save us from hell? Who carries on the work of Christ in the world now? What does the priest do for our soul? Whose grace does he bring into our soul? How does he bring God's grace

into our soul? Who gives us the Sacraments? In whose name does the priest take care of our soul? What life does he wish to make strong in us? How does he make the life of grace strong in us?

When does the priest first give us the life of grace? Why are we said to be born again in Baptism? What does the priest do for those who fall into sin after Baptism? How does he heal their soul from sin? What is the medicine for the soul? What Sacrament does the priest give to take away sins from the soul? Why do we call the priest father? What does he do for us like a father? Of what life does he take care in us? How does he take care of the life of grace in us?

Why do we respect the priest so much? In whose name does he work for us? Whose power does he use when he gives us the Sacraments? Whose power does he use when he says Mass? Whose minister is he? Why do good men lift the hat when they meet a priest? Who holds the highest position on earth? Why does the priest hold the highest position on earth? In whose name does he do his sacred duties? Any boy who likes to learn and who loves God may study to become a priest. They may begin when they are twelve or fourteen years old. Those

who become priests study for many years so that they will be able to teach the people well. They must be ready to live for the good of the people. Then when they receive the Sacrament of Holy Orders God calls them to be priests. This is called the vocation to priesthood. So you see God is willing to call any one who will prepare himself well for the priesthood.

Who ordains priests? What Sacrament do they receive when the bishop ordains them? When does God call them to be priests? Who calls them when the bishop ordains them? Who can study to be a priest? Those who become priests first receive minor orders. They become subdeacons and then deacons. Priests sometimes become bishops. To be a bishop is the highest order of the priesthood. Of course only priests can become bishops.

Now, what orders do those who are to become priests first receive? What other two orders do they then receive before they become priests? What is the highest order of the priesthood? Who is the only person that can become a bishop? Priests will be priests forever. Nothing can ever change them into laymen after they become priests. No matter if they never act as priests they are always priests after they receive the Sacrament of Holy Orders.

To whom do priests give their whole lives? What men spend their lives for the good of the people? What men live for the good of their families? For whom do married men live? Why do priests not marry? For whom are they free to live when they have no family to live for? What Sacrament gives them the grace to live for the people alone? For whom do the priests work? What do they do for the people? What do they teach the people? What do they do for little babies? How do they feed the souls of the people? What do they do for sinners? For whom do they offer the Sacrifice of the Mass every day? What do they do for sick people?

Who support the priest so that he can live? Why do the people support the priest? For whom is he giving his life? Why are good people glad to give to the priest? What Commandment of the Church tells us to give to support the priest? What does the Fifth Commandment of the Church tell us? Why do good people love the priest? What do they call the priest? How does the priest show his love for the people? To whom does the priest lead the people? Why does he lead them to God? Where is he helping them to go when they die? Why does he try to bring them all to heaven? How does he show his love for

God? Whom will the people love if they listen to his teaching?

The Sacrament of Matrimony

What Sacrament did your father and mother receive when they were married? When do people receive the Sacrament of Matrimony? What Sacrament gave your father and mother grace to love each other? What Sacrament gave them grace to raise you to love God? What Sacrament made your father and mother husband and wife? What Sacrament did they receive so that they could become your father and mother? What Sacrament, then, gave you your father and mother?

When do people form a home? When did your father and mother form your home? What Sacrament did they receive so that they could form a home for you? What Sacrament, then, gave you your home? Why do people get married? What Sacrament do they receive so that they may become fathers and mothers? Why did your father and mother get married? What did they have to do so that they could become your father and mother? What do people have to do to form a home?

You know Catholics must be married before a

priest to be really married. If Catholics went to somebody else to be married, they would not be really husband and wife. In what Sacrament are people really married? Why do they go to Confession before they receive the Sacrament of Matrimony? From what must they be free to receive the Sacrament of Matrimony? What grace does the Sacrament of Matrimony give them? What other Sacrament do people receive when they are being married? Why do they receive Holy Communion? How do good people wish to begin their married life?

Catholics are married at Mass. There is a special Mass for those who are being married. It is called the Nuptial Mass. There is a beautiful blessing in this Mass which the priest reads over the woman. He begs God to bless her and make her a good mother to her children. Who blesses the marriage when Catholics are married? In whose name does the priest bless the marriage? Before whom must Catholics be married to be really married? How long will married people be husband and wife? They will be husband and wife until death. No power on earth can take away their marriage until one of them dies.

Why is marriage a holy state? In what Sacrament are people married? What does the Sacra-

ment of Matrimony give them? What did the Sacrament of Matrimony do for you? How did you get your father and mother? What made it possible for you to have a home? What makes homes happy? What kind of home is it when all love one another? What made the home of the Holy Family happy? What does it show when all the members of the family are kind to one another? When do they try to help one another? How do they speak to one another?

Why do you pray for your father and mother and your sisters and brothers? Why do you obey your parents and try to help them? What do you do for your brothers and sisters? With whom do you hope to be in heaven? How long will you be with your father and mother and your brothers and sisters in heaven?

Test Questions

1. For what did our Lord give us the Sacrament of Extreme Unction? 2. What does the priest do when he gives the Sacrament of Extreme Unction? 3. What grace does the Sacrament of Extreme Unction give us? 4. Who are ordained for the Church in the Sacrament of Holy Orders? 5. What grace does the Sacrament of Holy Orders give God's ministers? 6. Why did our Lord give us the Sacrament of Matrimony? 7. What grace does the Sacrament of Matrimony give husband and wife? 8. How long are those who receive the Sacrament of Matrimony husband and wife?

CHAPTER XL

Judgment

Each one of us will be judged immediately after death. This judgment is called the Particular Judgment. Those who are free from mortal sin, at death, will be saved. They will go either to purgatory or to heaven. Those who die in mortal sin will be condemned to hell. At the end of the world God will raise up our bodies from the dead. Then all the people will be gathered together to be judged by Christ. This judgment is called General Judgment. All that has been decreed by the Particular Judgment will be affirmed by the General Judgment. After the end of the world heaven and hell alone will exist. Purgatory will no longer exist.

You have come now, children, to the last lesson. Tell me again about our Heavenly Father. How does He show His love for us? What is God to us? Who are God's children? Tell me about God's family. Tell me about the world and why God made all things. Show me how you see God's love in everything around us. Tell me about our dwelling place here and then about our true home.

You said that God spoke to us. Tell me about that. How do we know so many things about

God and the angels and heaven? How do we know about the Blessed Trinity? Tell me about the Bible. How do we know all those things now? Who sent the Catholic Church to teach us? Tell me about the angels and what wonderful creatures they are. Tell me about our guardian angels. Tell me about the devils. How did they become devils?

For what did God make us? Where is our true home? Where are we really going when we die? Where is our Heavenly Father waiting for us? Tell me about hell. Why do people go there? What does it mean to go to hell? What does our Heavenly Father do to keep us from hell? Tell me about the Commandments. Why did God give them to us? How do they show God's love?

What does it mean to disobey God? What does sin do to people? What kind of sin sends people to hell? Tell me about original sin. Who came to free us from sin? How did our Lord save us? Who is our Lord's mother? Whom did He send to save us? Tell me all about the Catholic Church; the first priests; the Pope; the bishops.

Tell me about God's grace and what it does for the soul. Tell me about the Sacraments.

What do the Sacraments give us? When did you receive a new life for your soul? In which Sacrament do you receive the Holy Ghost? Which Sacrament takes away our sins? In which Sacrament do we receive our Lord's body and blood? What Sacrament do people receive when they are dying? What does the Sacrament of Holy Orders do for men? In which Sacrament are people married? How do the Sacraments show that God loves us? What do they give us? What does God's grace do for us? Why do we need God's grace? Why does God wish to have us with Him in heaven? How long will God love us in heaven? How long will you love God in heaven?

Why did God put us in this world? What must we do to love God? Why do we love God when we know Him? How do we learn to love God more and more? Why do we love God more the more we know Him? Why, then, must we learn to know God in this world?

What do you like to do for people when you love them? What does it show when you like to do things for people? How do you show your love for others? How do you show your love for God? Why do you like to obey God always? Why do you try to keep all God's Command-

ments well? Why do you serve God? Why do you pray to God every day? Why do you worship God? What do our churches show? When you love others, how do you use what belongs to them? Why do you like to take care of what belongs to others? To whom do all things belong? Tell me some of the things that belong to God. How do you use the things in the world to show your love for God? Who tells us how to use all the things in the world? How do we use things so as to obey God? When do people disobey God by the way in which they use things?

To whom does our body, our eyes, our ears, our tongue, our hands, our soul belong? Why must we use these right? How can we show love for God in using all these things? Who are God's children? How do sick people give us a chance to show our love for God? Why do we show love for God when we help sick people? For whom are you really showing love when you do kind deeds for others? To whom do all the people in the world belong? Just see how many ways there are in which to show our love for God. Why do you love all the people in the world? Whom are we learning to love all our life on earth? Why does God wish us to learn to love Him on earth? Where shall we be with

God? How does God want us to prepare for heaven? Why must we learn to love God to prepare to go to heaven? When shall we love God forever?

What does it show when we try to be good all our life? Whom do we obey when we do good? Whom do people disobey when they commit sin? What does it show when any one disobeys God? How long shall we live here on earth? Who knows when we shall die? What happens when people grow very old? At what other times do people die? Who can tell whether or not people are fit to go to heaven when they die?

Who judges us as soon as we die? Why does God judge each one of us when we die? Who says whether or not people are to go to heaven when they die? When does God say that? God judges each one of us when we die. This is called the Particular Judgment. In one instant God judges us. If our soul is pure, then we go straight to heaven.

Where do people go who die with venial sin on their soul? Where do those go who have not done enough penance for their sins? How long will they have to suffer in purgatory? Where will they go from purgatory as soon as their soul is made pure? What do we call the judgment

after death? When does the Particular Judgment take place?

Where do people go who die with mortal sin on their soul? Who are those who do not love God? What kind of sin makes people hate God? When did the bad angels begin to hate God? Why did the bad angels have to go away from God? Why do people who die in mortal sin have to go away from God? Whom do they hate? When do people begin to hate God? What do we have to learn to do to go to heaven? Whom do we learn to love? Whom do all the people that go to heaven love? Why cannot people in mortal sin go to heaven? Why do they have to go to hell?

Whom do the angels in heaven love? Whom do the saints love? Whom do the devils hate? Who hates all the people in the world? Who hates all the people in hell? Who hate one another? Where is there always hate? Where is there always love? What kind of sin makes people love God less than they did? Why does venial sin send people to purgatory? Whom will they love more than ever when their soul is made pure? Why will they be allowed to go to heaven when their soul is pure?

When will God forgive people that commit

sin? What must they do before they die? When is it too late to be sorry for their sins? Whom must they love to be really sorry for their sins? What will happen to them if they die before they are sorry for their sins? What will happen to them if they don't do penance after their sins are forgiven? How long will the wicked have to suffer in hell? How long will the devils hate God? With whom will the wicked be in hell? Why can they never go to heaven? Whom must we love to go to heaven?

What kind of people love God? How do good people show their love for God? How do they prepare to go to heaven? When does God judge people to say whether or not they are fit to go to heaven? What kind of people will God say are fit to go to heaven?

When will God judge us for all that we have done on earth? What will He do for those who have done good all their life? Why will they be fit to go to heaven? Whom will God take straight to heaven? Why will God take them straight to heaven when their soul is pure? Whom do we love very much when our soul is pure? With whom shall we be in heaven? Whom shall we love in heaven? Who will love us forever? Where do all love one another? What kind of people

are very happy when they are dying? Why are good people so happy when they are dying? To whom are they really going? Where shall we all be united in love forever? To what saint do we pray for a happy death? Why do we pray to St. Joseph for a happy death? Who were with St. Joseph when he died? Why was St. Joseph very happy when he was dying? How did the saints feel when they were dying?

What is the Particular Judgment? What does God do as soon as we die? Why does God judge us when we die? What does He say to those who die in mortal sin? How long will they have to suffer in hell? Where do those who die in venial sin go? Where do those go whose soul is pure?

When will God bring our body back to life? Yes; on the last day of the world God will gather together all the people that ever lived. Then our Lord will come to judge them all together. This will be the General Judgment. Of course, our Lord will judge them all the same as He did at the Particular Judgment. Why then do you think our Lord will judge all the people together at the end of the world? He will show how just the Particular Judgment was. At the end of the world our Lord will come in great glory. He

will be surrounded by multitudes of angels and saints. You can read about this in the Gospel of St. Matthew 25. How many people will be gathered together for the General Judgment? When will the General Judgment take place? What will the General Judgment show? When will purgatory come to an end?

What two places only will exist after the last day? How long will heaven and hell exist after that? How many of us will have our body again on the last day? The Bible says that the wicked will all be placed together at our Lord's left hand. Then He will say to them: "Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire which was prepared for the devil and his angels. For I was hungry, and you gave me not to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave me not to drink; I was a stranger, and you took me not in; naked, and you covered me not; sick, and in prison, and you did not visit me." (St. Matt. 25.)

Now, why will our Lord say all this to the wicked? How could they have given Him something to eat and the rest? To whom did our Lord want them to do these things? Whose children are the poor and the outcast and the sick? What did it show when they did not do kind deeds for others in their life? Where will

the wicked all go after our Lord says this to them? How long will they have to stay in hell? What will they suffer in hell? From whom will they be separated? With whom will they be forever? How do you think the wicked will feel at the General Judgment?

The Bible says that the good people will all stand together at our Lord's right hand. Then He will say to them: "Come, ye blessed of my Father, possess you the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. For I was hungry, and you gave me to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave me to drink; I was a stranger, and you took me in; naked, and you covered me; sick, and you visited me; I was in prison, and you came to me." (St. Matt. 25.)

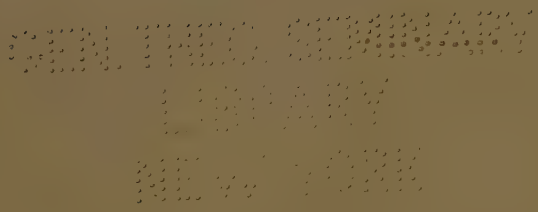
Now, why will our Lord say that they gave Him food and drink and shelter? For whom did they show love when they did these things to poor people? Where will our Lord take the good people after that? When will they have their body forever? Who will be very, very happy at the General Judgment? Whom shall you have with you in heaven? When shall you be united with all your dear ones? How long shall you love one another there? What shall you have in heaven? When shall you have all that

you can desire? How will the good people feel at the General Judgment?

When shall you be with the Blessed Virgin and all the angels and saints? How many of them shall love you? How long will they love you? Whom shall you love forever? When shall we be in our true home? When shall we be united with our Heavenly Father? For what should we thank God every day? Why does God wish to have us with Him in heaven?

Test Questions

1. When will God judge each one of us? 2. What is the judgment after death called? 3. Who go to purgatory? 4. Who go to hell? 5. Who go to heaven? 6. When will the General Judgment take place? 7. What will the General Judgment show? 8. What two places only will exist after the end of the world?



WITHDRAWN
FROM
LIBRARY

238.28
M15b

MacEachen, R.A.

Relidion, second manual

238.28
M15b